



MORRIS GARAGES

Since 1924



ASTOR

INDIA'S FIRST CAR WITH AI INSIDE

OWNER'S MANUAL



MORRIS GARAGES
Since 1924

- ◆ Do not use blower or infotainment system in engine off mode.
- ◆ Ensure door, hood and tail gate are properly locked.
- ◆ In AT/CVT - Shift to **P** before switching off ignition.

Welcome to the world of MG!!!

Thank you for choosing MG Astor – India's first Car with AI Inside

This manual will familiarize you with the operation and maintenance of your new vehicle. It will also provide you important safety information. Please do read it carefully and follow the recommendations. This manual is like a permanent part of your car. It would go a long way in ensuring a safe and trouble-free operation and running of your MG Astor.

In case of any query, please feel free to call our 24 hours Helpline at 1800 100 6464 or email us at: pulsehub@mgmotor.co.in

Find your nearest MG authorized dealer by visiting www.mgmotor.co.in/tools/dealers

SAFE and HAPPY DRIVING

From
Team MG India

Contents

Preface	1	Lights and Switches	23	Sunvisor	34
Introduction.....	1	• Master Lighting Switch	23	Windows	34
• The Owner's Handbook	1	• Headlamp Levelling Manual		• Power Operated Window Switch ..	34
• Status at Time of Printing	1	Adjustment	24	• Window Operation	35
• Symbols Used	1	• Fog Lamp Switch	25	Sunroof *	36
Vehicle Identification		• Direction Indicator/Main Beam		• Instructions	36
Information	2	Switch	25	• Sunroof Operation (Knob Switch)*..	36
• Vehicle Identification	2	• Auxiliary Lighting System *	27	• Sunroof Operation (Push Switch)* ..	39
• Vehicle Identification Label.....	3	• Hazard Warning Lamp	27	Interior Lights	42
I Instruments and Controls	5	Wipers and Washers	28	Power Socket	42
Instruments and Controls.....	6	• Windscreen Wiper Operation	28	Storage Devices	43
Instrument Pack	7	• Programmed Wash/Wipe	29	• Instructions	43
• Instrument Pack-Colour Display A *	7	• Rear Window Wiper Operation	29	• Glove Box	44
• Instrument Pack-Colour Display B *	7	Steering System	31	• Card Box	44
Information Centre	8	• Adjustment of Steering Wheel	31	• Centre Console Armrest Box	44
• Information Centre - Colour		• Electric Power Steering	31	Cup Holder	45
Display A *	8	Horn	32	• Centre Console Cup Holder*	45
• Information Centre - Colour		Mirrors	32	• Rear Armrest and Rear Cup	
Display B *	14	• Door Mirrors	32	Holder*	45
Warning Lights and Indicators ...	18	• Interior Rearview Mirror	33	Roof Luggage Rack *	45

• Maximum Authorised Load for the Roof	46	• Air Circulation Mode	53	• Vehicle-Mobile Phone Interconnection*.....	67
• Periodical Check.....	46	• Air Distribution Mode	53	• A/C	68
2 Air Conditioning and Audio Systems	47	• Temperature Control	54	• Vehicle Settings	68
Ventilation	48	• Blower Speed Control.....	54	• Settings	68
• A/C Filter	48	A/C Control Interface - Connected Car *	54	3 Seats & Restraints.....	69
• Vents	49	• Control Interface	54	Seats.....	70
A/C Control Panel	50	• Temperature Control	55	• Overview	70
• Control Panel	50	• Cooling On/Off	55	• Head Restraints	70
• A/C Control Shortcut	50	• Auto Mode.....	55	• Front Seats	71
• Defrost/Demist	50	• System On/Off	55	• Rear Seats	71
• Heated Rear Window	50	• Blower Speed Control.....	55	Seat Belts	72
• Blower Speed Control Button	50	• Air Distribution Mode.....	55	• Protection Provided by Seat Belts ..	73
• Temperature Control Button	50	• Air Circulation Mode	56	• Wearing Seat Belts	73
A/C Control Interface - Non Connected Car *	51	Entertainment Player.....	56	• Children and Seat Belts	76
• Control Interface	51	• Important Safety Information	56	• Seat Belt Pre-tensioners	76
• Control Interface - MY22	52	• Cautions for Using Screen	57	• Seat Belt Checks, Maintenance and Replacement.....	77
• System On/Off	52	• Additional Notes	57	Airbag Supplementary Restraint System.....	79
• Auto Mode.....	52	• Basic Operations	57	• Overview	79
• Cooling On/Off	53	• Bluetooth Phone.....	61	• Airbag Deployment	80
		• Entertainment	63		

• Conditions in Which Airbags Will Not Deploy	82	• START/STOP Switch (Key Start)*	103	Automatic Transmission*	113
• Disabling the Passenger Airbag.....	82	• START/STOP Switch (Keyless Start)*	104	• Instructions	113
• Service and Replacement of Airbags	83	• Starting the Engine(Key Start)*	105	• Gear Shift.....	113
• Disposal of Airbags	84	• Starting the Engine (Keyless Start)*	106	• Driving on the Hill	115
Child Restraints	85	• Precautions for Starting the Engine	107	• P Gear Emergency Release	115
• Important Safety Instructions about Using Child Restraints	85	• Stopping the Engine.....	108	• Control Mode	116
• Child Restraints Groups	87	Economical and Environmental Driving	108	Manual Transmission*	118
• Approved Child Restraint Positions.....	89	• Running-in	108	• 5-speed Manual Transmission	118
4 Starting & Driving.....	95	• Environment Protection	108	Continuously Variable Automatic Transmission*	119
Keys	96	• Economic Driving	108	• Instructions	119
• Overview	96	• Driving in Special Environment	109	• Gear Shift.....	119
• Replacing the Battery	97	• Check and Service	109	• Driving on Hills.....	121
Child Proof Locks	99	Catalytic Converter	110	• P Gear Emergency Release	121
Alarm System.....	99	Fuel System	111	• Control Modes	122
• Engine Immobilisation	99	• Fuel Requirements	111	Brake System	124
• Anti-theft System	100	• Fuel Filler	112	• Foot Brake	124
• Tailgate	102	• Refueling	112	• Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD)	124
Starting and Stopping Engine	103			• Electronic Brake Assistance (EBA) *	125
				• Hill Hold Control (HHC)*	125

• Auto Hold*	126
• Hill Descent Control (HDC) *	127
• Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	129
• Active Rollover Protection (ARP) *	130
• Emergency Braking Hazard Warning Lights Control System (HAZ)	130
• Parking Brake *	130
• Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) * ..	131

Stability Control System (SCS) and Traction Control System (TCS) *

Cruise Control System *

Adaptive Cruise Control System *

• Adaptive Cruise Control System Activation	135
• Adaptive Cruise Target Speed Adjustment	137
• Adaptive Cruise Target Following Distance Adjustment	137
• Adaptive Cruise Pause/Standby	137

• Automatic Deactivation of Adaptive Cruise	138
• Adaptive Cruise Override	138
• Adaptive Cruise Resume	138
• Clear Speed Memory	138
• Adaptive Cruise Control System Impairment and Ineffectiveness	138
• Special Driving Environments	139

Driving Assist System *

• Description of Front View Camera	141
• Description of Front Detection Radar	141
• Speed Assist System	142
• Lane Assist System	146
• Forward Collision System	148

Active Speed Limit (ASL) System*

• Activate	150
• Suspend ASL	151
• Resume ASL	151
• Exit ASL	151

Parking Aid System

• Ultrasonic Sensor Parking Aid	152
• Parking Camera System*	153
• 360 Panoramic Imaging System* ...	153

Rear Driver Assistance System *

• System Overview.....	154
• Switching the System Functions On/Off	155
• System Functions	155

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*

Load Carrying.....

• Load Space	159
• Internal Loading	159

5 Emergency Information

Hazard Warning Devices

• Warning Triangle	162
--------------------------	-----

Emergency Starting

• Using Booster Cables	162
• Starting the Vehicle	162

Vehicle Recovery	164	• Bonnet Open Warning	181	Washers	189
• Towing for Recovery	164	Engine Compartment	182	• Windscreen Washer Check and Top Up	189
• Transporter or Trailer with Rope	166	• 1.5L Engine Compartment	182	• Washer Nozzles	189
Wheel Replacement	167	• 1.3L Turbocharged Engine Compartment.....	183	Wipers	190
• Spare Wheel and Toolbox	167	Engine.....	184	• Wiper Blades	190
• Changing a Wheel.....	167	• Engine Oil	184	• Replacing Front Wiper Blades (Without frame)*	190
Fuse Replacement	170	• Engine Oil Level Check and Top Up.....	184	• Replacing Front Wiper Blades (With frame)*	191
• Fuse.....	170	• Engine Oil Specification	185	• Replacing Rear Wiper Blades	191
• Fuse Box	170	Cooling System	186	Tyres	192
• Passenger Compartment Fuse Box	171	• Coolant Check and Top Up	186	• Overview	192
• Front Compartment Fuse Box	173	• Coolant Specification	186	• New Tyres	192
Bulb Replacement	175	Brake	187	• Directional Tyres	192
• Bulb Specification.....	175	• Brake Pads	187	• Tyre Life.....	192
• Bulb Replacement	176	• Brake Fluid Check and Top Up.....	187	• Tyre Pressure	192
6 Maintenance	177	• Brake Fluid Specification	187	• Driving Style.....	193
• Maintenance	178	Battery	188	• Wheel Balance.....	193
• Routine Maintenance	178	• Battery Maintenance	188	• Wheel Alignment.....	193
Bonnet.....	181	• Battery Replacement.....	188	• Caring for Your Tyres	193
• Opening the Bonnet.....	181			• Tyre Pressure	193
• Closing the Bonnet	181				

Contents

• Valves	193	MG Roadside Assistance	
• Punctured Tyres.....	194	24x7	221
• Tyre Wear Indicators	194	Service Coupon	227
• Replacement Tyres.....	194	Change of Ownership	
• Wheel Fitment Rotation	194	Record	235
Cleaning and Vehicle Care.....	195	Maintenance Interval	236
• External Car.....	195	Maintenance Record Sheet	238
• Cleaning the Interior.....	197	MG Motor India Sales and Service	
7 Technical Data	199	Network.....	240
Technical Data Dimensions	200		
Weights	202		
Major Parameters of Engine.....	204		
Recommended Fluids and			
Capacities	206		
Wheel Alignment (Unladen)	207		
Wheels and Tyres	207		
Tyre Pressure (Cold)	208		
Delivery of your Vehicle.....	209		
MG Motor New Vehicle			
Warranty	213		

Introduction

The Owner's Handbook

This handbook describes all of the vehicles and standard equipment specification within the model range. Some of the information therefore, may not apply to your particular car.

Always remember that if you have any queries concerning the operation or specification of your car, your MG Authorised Repairer will be glad to advise you.

The illustrations in the Owner's Handbook are for reference only.

The information presented in this manual may vary slightly depending on vehicle configuration, software version and sales area.

Status at Time of Printing

MG operates a policy of constant product improvement and therefore reserves the right to change specifications without notice at any time. Whilst every effort is made to ensure complete accuracy of the information in this publication, no liabilities for inaccuracies or the consequences thereof, including loss or damage to property, or injury to persons, can be accepted by the manufacturer or MG Authorised Repairer who supplied the publication, except in respect of personal injury caused by the negligence of the manufacturer or MG Authorised Repairer.

Symbols Used

The following symbols used within the handbook call your attention to specific types of information.

Warning



This warning symbol identifies procedures that must be followed precisely, or information that must be considered with great care, in order to reduce the risk of personal injury or serious damage to the car.

Important

IMPORTANT

The statements stated here must be followed strictly, otherwise your car could be damaged.

Note: *This describes helpful information.*



This symbol indicates parts described must be disposed of by authorised persons or bodies to protect the environment.

Asterisk

An asterisk (*) appearing within the text, identifies features or items of equipment that are either optional, or are only fitted to some vehicles in the model range.

Illustration Information



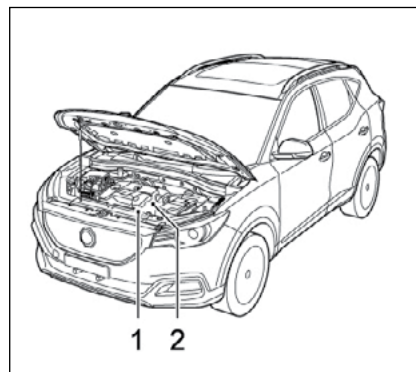
Identifies components being explained.



Identifies movement of components being explained.

Vehicle Identification Information

Vehicle Identification



1 Engine Number

2 Transmission Number

Always quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) when communicating with your MG Authorised Repairer. If the engine or transmission is involved, it may be required to provide the identification numbers of these assemblies.

Vehicle Identification Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

- On the identification plate;
- On the floor under the front right hand seat;
- On the inner side of the tailgate visible by opening the tailgate.

Note: The DLC is located in the driver footwell at the base of the fascia panel on the RH side. The VIN information can be extracted from the vehicle using the approved diagnostic equipment.

Engine Number Location

Stamped on the front right of the cylinder block (View from the front of the engine).

Transmission Number Location

On the surface of the transmission housing in the engine compartment. The transmission numbers of certain models are only visible by raising the vehicle, please contact a local Authorised Repairer.

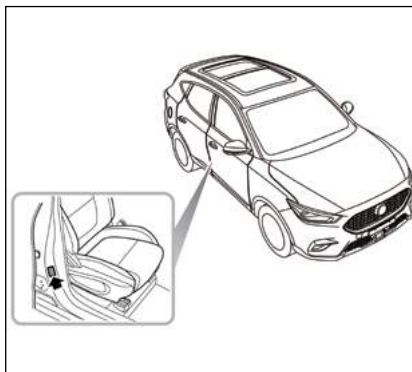
Vehicle Identification Label

The vehicle identification label contains the following information:

- Model /Type;
- Engine Type;
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN);
- Date;
- Country;
- Manufacturer.

Location of Vehicle Identification Label

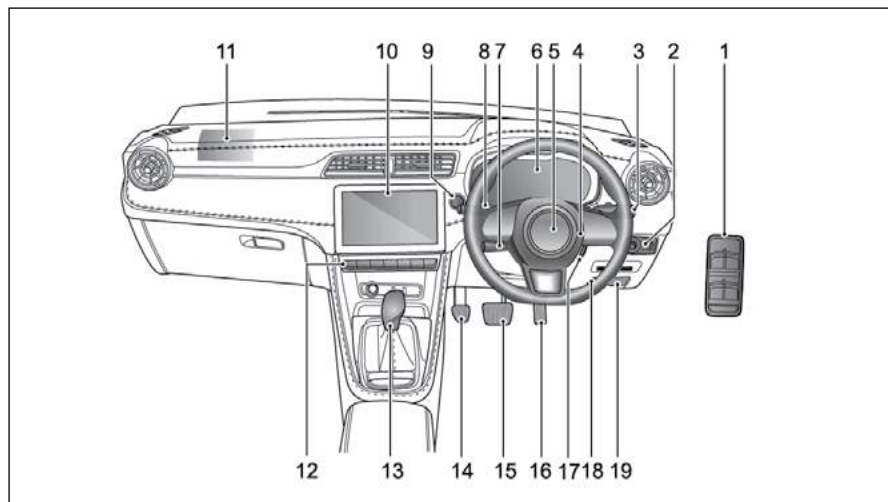
The identification label is located at the lower side of right pillar B



Instruments and Controls

Instruments and Controls.....	6
Instrument Pack.....	7
Information Centre	8
Warning Lights and Indicators	18
Lights and Switches.....	23
Wipers and Washers	28
Steering System	30
Horn.....	32
Mirrors	32
Sunvisor	34
Windows.....	34
Sunroof *.....	36
Interior Lights	42
Power Socket.....	42
Storage Devices.....	43
Cup Holder	45
Roof Luggage Rack *.....	45

Instruments and Controls



- 1 Power Window Switch
- 2 Exterior Rearview Mirror and Headlamp Leveling Switch
- 3 Wiper Stalk Switch
- 4 Horn Button
- 5 Driver Airbag

- 6 Instrument Pack
- 7 Cruise Control/ASL Stalk Switch *
- 8 Indicator/Main Beam Stalk Switch
- 9 START/STOP Switch (Keyless Start) *
- 10 Infotainment System
- 11 Front Passenger Airbag

- 12 Infotainment/Air Conditioning Control Switch
- 13 Gear Shift Lever
- 14 Clutch Pedal *
- 15 Brake Pedal
- 16 Accelerator Pedal
- 17 START/STOP Switch (Key Start) *
- 18 Bonnet Release Handle
- 19 Fuel Filler Flap Release Handle

Instrument Pack

Instrument Pack - Colour Display A *



Speedometer (1)

Indicates the vehicle speed in km/h.

Tachometer (2)

Indicates the engine speed, $\times 1000$ rpm.

IMPORTANT

To protect the engine from damage, never allow the pointer to remain in the red sector of the gauge for prolonged periods.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge (3)

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

Fuel Gauge (4)

Indicates the quantity of fuel in the tank.

The low fuel warning lamp will illuminate yellow or flash when the fuel remaining in the fuel tank is low.

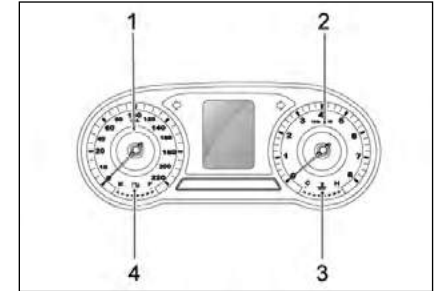
IMPORTANT

If the low fuel warning lamp illuminates, please refuel as early as possible.



Indicates that the fuel filler is located on the right side of the vehicle.

Instrument Pack - Colour Display B *



Speedometer (1)

Indicates the vehicle speed in km/h.

Tachometer (2)

Indicates the engine speed, $\times 1000$ rpm.

IMPORTANT

To protect the engine from damage, never allow the pointer to remain in the red sector of the gauge for prolonged periods.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge (3)

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

Fuel Gauge (4)

Indicates the quantity of fuel in the tank.

The low fuel warning lamp will illuminate yellow or flash when the fuel remaining in the fuel tank is low.

IMPORTANT

If the low fuel warning lamp illuminates, please refuel as early as possible.

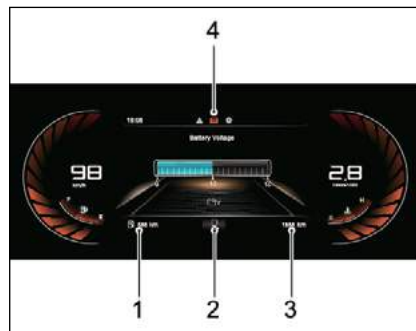


Indicates that the fuel filler is located on the right side of the vehicle.

Note: Depending on the vehicle options, software version and market area, the information displayed may vary slightly.

Information Centre

Information Centre - Colour Display A *



The information centre provides the followings:

- 1 Range To Empty
- 2 Gear Display *
- 3 Total Mileage
- 4 General Information

Range To Empty

Displays the estimated mileage that the vehicle can travel before the fuel gauge reads empty.

Gear Display *

Displays the current gear position of the transmission (P, R, N, D, S, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7*, 8*). If "EP" is displayed, it indicates that a fault has been detected with the transmission. Please seek an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible. Refer to "Starting & Driving" section.

Total Mileage

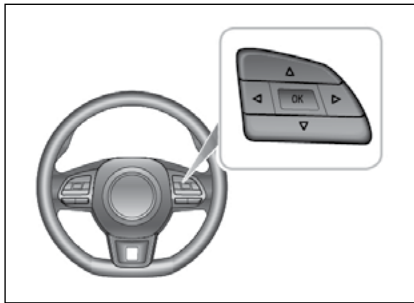
Displays the total driving mileage of the vehicle.

General Information

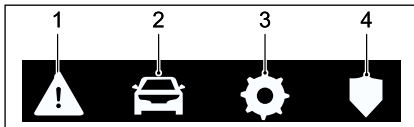
The general information function can be selected as follows:

- Press the UP/DOWN/LEFT/RIGHT button on the right hand multifunction steering wheel switch to shift the display items.
- Press the UP/DOWN button on the right hand multifunction steering wheel switch to make adjustment.

- Press the OK button on the right hand multifunction steering wheel switch to confirm or long press OK button to reset.



General information provides the following:



- Warning Information
- Trip Computer
- Setting
- Active Safety *

Warning Information

Displays the warning information or important notes that are currently relevant to the vehicle.

Trip Computer

Trip computer functions contain the following:

- Default Page:** displays the current status of the locks, lights and doors.
- Current Journey:** displays the range, duration, average speed and average fuel consumption since startup. These values will be reset after a period of power off. It can also be reset by long pressing the OK button on the right hand multifunction steering wheel switch.
- Accumulated Total:** displays the range, duration, average speed and average fuel consumption since the last reset. It can be reset by long pressing the OK button on the right hand multifunction steering wheel switch.
- Tyre Pressures:** displays the current tyre status for each wheel.
- Battery Voltage:** displays the 12V Battery Voltage.

Setting

Brightness

Displays the current level and allows adjustment of the backlight brightness.

Next Service

Displays and facilitates the reset of the current vehicle maintenance information.

Active Safety *

Displays the information of active safety.

Warning Message

Warning messages and prompts are displayed in the information centre in the instrument pack. Any communications are displayed in 'pop up' messages, these can be divided into the following categories:

- Operating Instruction
- System State Instruction
- System Malfunction Alert

Please follow the instructions displayed in the 'pop up' message or in the case of a warning message, please refer to the relevant section of the owners manual to follow the correct instructions.

Instruments and Controls

The following are a selection of warning messages that may appear in the information centre.

Warning Message	Procedure
Cruise Control Fault	Indicates that the cruise control system has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Active Speed Limiter Fault	Indicates that the active speed limit system has detected a fault. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Speed Assist System Fault	Indicates that the Speed Assist System (SAS) has failed. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Engine Coolant Temperature High	High engine coolant temperature could result in severe damage. As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle and switch off the engine and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Warning Message	Procedure
Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor Fault	Indicates that the engine coolant temperature sensor has failed. As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle and switch off the engine and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Low Oil Pressure	Indicates that the oil pressure is too low, which may result in severe engine damage. As soon as safety permits, stop the car, switch off the engine and check the engine oil level. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Engine Fault	Indicates that a failure has occurred that will effect engine performance and emissions. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Warning Message	Procedure
Check Engine	Indicates that a failure has occurred that may severely damage the engine. As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Clutch Switch Fault	Indicates that the clutch switch has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Ignition System Fault	Indicates that the ignition system has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Start Stop Button Fault	Indicates that the Start Stop button has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Warning Message	Procedure
Passive Entry Fault	Indicates that the passive keyless entry (PKE) function has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
ABS Fault	Indicates that the anti-lock brake system (ABS) has failed and the ABS function is about to be disabled. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Brake Fault	Indicates that the brake fluid could be low or a fault has been detected in the Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBD) system. As soon as safety permits, stop the car, switch off the engine and check the brake fluid level. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Warning Message	Procedure
Stability Control Fault	Indicates that the stability control system has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Traction Control Fault	Indicates that the traction control system has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
EPB System Fault	Indicates that the electronic parking brake system (EPB) has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Park Brake Force Not Enough	Indicates that there is an issue with the electronic parking brake, it may not be able to provide adequate clamping force. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Warning Message	Procedure
Autohold Fault	Indicates that the Autohold System has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Hill Descent Control Fault	Indicates that the hill descent control system has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Warning Message	Procedure
EPS Performance Reduced	Indicates that the electric power steering system has a general failure and that the steering performance has been reduced. As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle and switch off the engine. After a short while, start the engine, drive the vehicle a short distance and monitor the operation of the steering, if the message is still displayed or the steering assistance reduced please contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
EPS Assistance Failure	Indicates that the electric power steering system has failed. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Warning Message	Procedure
Steering Angle Fault	Indicates that the steering angle sensor has failed. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Steering Angle Uncalibrated	Indicates that the steering angle sensor is not calibrated. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
ESCL Fault	Indicates that a fault has been detected with the Electronic Steering Column Lock (ESCL). As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle and switch off the engine. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Fuel Sensor Fault	Indicates that fuel sensor has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

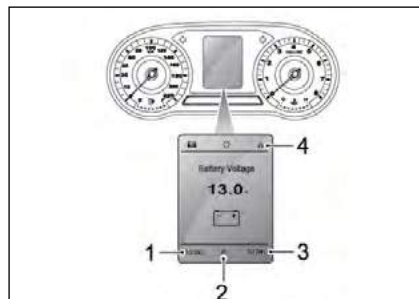
Warning Message	Procedure
Airbag Fault	Indicates that the Airbag system has detected a fault. As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle and switch off the engine and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Front Left/Front Right/Rear Left/Rear Right Tyre Sensor Battery Low	Indicates that the Tyre Pressure Monitoring system has detected that a tyre pressure sensor has a low battery. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
TPMS Fault	Indicates that the tyre pressure monitoring system has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
12V Battery Charging System Fault	Indicates that the 12V battery charging system has failed. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Warning Message	Procedure
Front Camera System Fault	It indicates that the front camera has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Front Camera Calibration Failed	Indicates that the front view camera module (FVCM) calibration has failed. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
RADAR Calibration Failed	Indicates that the radar module calibration has failed. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Lane Departure Warning System Fault	Indicates that the lane departure warning system (LDW) has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Lane Keep Assist System Fault	Indicates that the lane keep assist system (LKA) has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Warning Message	Procedure
Forward Collision System Fault	Indicates that the forward collision warning system (FCW) has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Auto Emergency Braking System Fault	Indicates that the auto emergency braking system (AEB) has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Pedestrian Auto Emergency Braking Fault	Indicates that the auto emergency braking system for pedestrians (AEBP) has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
ACC System Fault	Indicates that the adaptive cruise control system (ACC) has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Warning Message	Procedure
Rear Drive Assist System Fault	Indicates that the rear drive assist system (RDA) has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Information Centre - Colour Display B *



1 Digital Clock

2 Gear Display *

3 Total Mileage

4 General Information

Digital Clock

Displays the current time in digital form.

Gear Display *

Displays the current gear position of the transmission (P,R,N,D,S,1,2,3,4,5,6, 7*, 8*). If "EP" is displayed, it indicates that a fault has been detected with the transmission. Please seek an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible. Refer to "Starting & Driving" section.

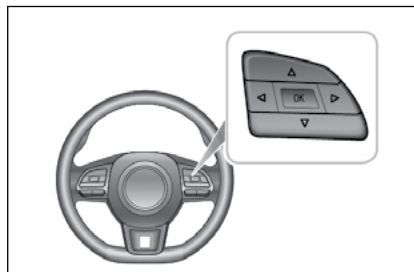
Total Mileage

Displays the total driving mileage of the vehicle.

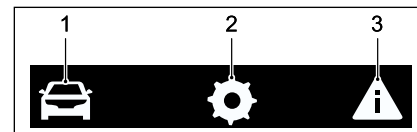
General Information

The general information function can be selected as follows:

- Press the UP/DOWN/LEFT/RIGHT button on the right hand multifunction steering wheel switch to shift the display items.
- Press the UP/DOWN button on the right hand multifunction steering wheel switch to make adjustment.
- Press the OK button on the right hand multifunction steering wheel switch to confirm or long press OK button to reset.



General information provides the following:



1 Trip Computer

2 Setting

3 Warning Information

Trip Computer

Trip computer functions contain the following:

- Current Speed: displays the current vehicle speed in a digital form.
- Range to Empty: displays the range that the vehicle can travel before the fuel tank is empty, the value of the range will change after refueling.
- Current Journey: displays the range, duration, average speed and average fuel consumption since startup. These values will be reset after a period of power off. It can also be reset by long pressing the OK button on the right hand multifunction steering wheel switch.

- **Accumulated Total:** displays the range, duration, average speed and average fuel consumption since the last reset. It can be reset by long pressing the OK button on the right hand multifunction steering wheel switch.
- **Instantaneous Fuel Economy:** displays the current fuel consumption when the engine is working.
- **Battery Voltage:** displays the 12V Battery Voltage.

Setting

Brightness

Displays the current level and allows adjustment of the backlight brightness.

Note: This option can only be adjusted when the side lamps are on.

Next Service

Displays and facilitates the reset of the current vehicle maintenance information.

Warning Information

Displays the warning information or important notes that are currently relevant to the vehicle.

Warning Message

Warning messages and prompts are displayed in the information centre in the instrument pack. Any communications are displayed in 'pop up' messages, these can be divided into the following categories:

- Operating Instruction
- System State Instruction
- System Malfunction Alert

Please follow the instructions displayed in the 'pop up' message or in the case of a warning message, please refer to the relevant section of the owners manual to follow the correct instructions.

The following are a selection of warning messages that may appear in the information centre.

Warning Message	Procedure
Engine Coolant Temperature High	High engine coolant temperature could result in severe damage. As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle and switch off the engine and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor Fault	Indicates that the engine coolant temperature sensor has failed. As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle and switch off the engine and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Low Oil Pressure	Indicates that the oil pressure is too low, which may result in severe engine damage. As soon as safety permits, stop the car, switch off the engine and check the engine oil level. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Warning Message	Procedure
Engine Fault	Indicates that a failure has occurred that will effect engine performance and emissions. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Check Engine	Indicates that a failure has occurred that may severely damage the engine. As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Clutch Switch Fault	Indicates that the clutch switch has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Ignition System Fault	Indicates that the ignition system has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Start Stop Button Fault	Indicates that the Start Stop button has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Warning Message	Procedure
ABS Fault	Indicates that the anti-lock brake system (ABS) has failed and the ABS function is about to be disabled. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Brake Fault	Indicates that the brake fluid could be low or a fault has been detected in the Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBD) system. As soon as safety permits, stop the car, switch off the engine and check the brake fluid level. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Stability Control Fault	Indicates that the stability control system has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
Traction Control Fault	Indicates that the traction control system has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Warning Message	Procedure
EPB System Fault	Indicates that the electronic parking brake system (EPB) has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Park Brake Force Not Enough	Indicates that there is an issue with the electronic parking brake, it may not be able to provide adequate clamping force. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Autohold Fault	Indicates that the Autohold System has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Hill Descent Control Fault	Indicates that the hill descent control system has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Warning Message	Procedure
EPS Performance Reduced	Indicates that the electric power steering system has a general failure and that the steering performance has been reduced. As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle and switch off the engine. After a short while, start the engine, drive the vehicle a short distance and monitor the operation of the steering, if the message is still displayed or the steering assistance reduced please contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.
EPS Assistance Failure	Indicates that the electric power steering system has failed. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Warning Message	Procedure
Steering Angle Fault	Indicates that the steering angle sensor has failed. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Steering Angle Uncalibrated	Indicates that the steering angle sensor is not calibrated. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Fuel Sensor Fault	Indicates that fuel sensor has detected a fault. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
Airbag Fault	Indicates that the Airbag system has detected a fault. As soon as conditions permit, safely stop the vehicle and switch off the engine and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Airbag Lamp Fail	It indicates that the airbag lamp has failed. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.
12V Battery Charging System Fault	Indicates that the 12V battery charging system has failed. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Warning Lights and Indicators

Some warning lamps illuminate or flash accompanied by a warning tone.

High Beam Indicator - Blue



The indicator illuminates when the headlamp high beam is turned on.

Side Lamp Indicator - Green



The indicator illuminates when the side lamps are on.

Auto Main Beam Indicator - Green *



The indicator illuminates when the auto main beam function has switched on the main beam lamps.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator - Yellow



The indicator illuminates when the rear fog lamps are on.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator - Green *



The indicator illuminates when the front fog lamps are on.

Direction Indicator Lamp - Green



The left and right direction indicator

lamps are represented by directional arrows that are located at the top of the instrument pack. When the turning signal lamp flashes, the direction indicator lamp on the corresponding side also flashes. If the hazard warning lamps are operated, both direction indicator lamps will flash together. If either direction indicator lamp in the instrument pack flashes very rapidly, it indicates that the turning signal light on the corresponding side has failed.

Note: *Failure of a side repeater lamp will have no effect on the flash frequency of direction indicator lamp.*

Anti-theft System Warning Lamp - Red



If no valid key is detected, this lamp illuminates red. Please use the correct key, or put the smart key at the bottom of the centre console cup holder. For specific location requirements, refer to "Alternative Starting Procedure" in "Starting & Driving" section.

If the remote key battery is low, this lamp will flash. Please replace the battery as soon as possible.

Airbag Warning Lamp - Red



If this lamp illuminates, it indicates

that there is a failure in the SRS or seat belt. Please seek an MG Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity. An SRS or seat belt fault may mean the components may not be deployed in the event of an accident.

Seat Belt Unfastened Warning Lamp - Red



If this lamp illuminates or flashes, it indicates that the seat belt for the driver or front passenger remains unfastened.

Engine Malfunction Warning - Yellow



This lamp will illuminate if an engine fault occurs that will effect engine performance during driving. Please stop the car as soon as safety permits, switch the engine OFF and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Engine Emissions Malfunction Warning - Yellow



If an engine fault occurs that will effect engine performance and emission after starting the vehicle, this lamp will illuminate. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning - Red



When the engine coolant temperature warning lamp illuminates red, it indicates that the coolant temperature is high. High engine coolant temperature could result in severe damage. Please stop the car as soon as safety permits, switch the engine OFF and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

If this lamp flashes, it indicates that the coolant temperature sensor has a failure. Please stop the car as soon as safety permits, switch the engine OFF and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Low Oil Pressure Warning - Red



If this lamp illuminates after starting the vehicle, it indicates that the oil pressure is too low, which may result in severe engine damage. Please stop the car as soon as safety permits, switch the engine OFF and check oil level (refer to "Engine Oil Level Check and Top Up" under the "Maintenance"). Contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Alternator Malfunction Warning - Red



If this lamp illuminates after starting

the vehicle, it indicates that the 12v battery charging system has a failure. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

In cases of low battery power, the prompt messages will appear in the information centre. In this case, the system will limit or turn off some electrical devices, please start the vehicle to charge the battery.

Cruise Control Indicator -Green/Yellow *



If the cruise control function is enabled, the system will enter into the standby state and the indicator illuminates in yellow.

When the cruise control system operates, this indicator illuminates green, indicating the cruise control system is activated.

If a failure in the cruise control system is detected, the indicator will flash in yellow. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Warning Lamp - Yellow *



If this lamp illuminates, it indicates a tyre pressure is low, please check the tyre pressures.

If this lamp flashes first and then remains on after a period of time, it indicates the system has a failure. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

Stability Control/Traction Control System Warning Lamp - Yellow *



If this lamp illuminates, it indicates that the stability control/traction control system has a failure. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

If this lamp flashes during driving, it indicates the system is operating to assist the driver.

Stability Control/Traction Control System Off Warning Lamp - Yellow *



This lamp will illuminate if the dynamic stability control/ traction control system is manually switched off.

ABS Malfunction Warning Lamp - Yellow



This lamp illuminates to indicate an ABS fault. If an ABS failure occurs while driving, ABS will function abnormally, but normal braking will still be available. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Brake System Malfunction Indicator Lamp - Red

If this lamp illuminates, it indicates a failure with the braking system such as brake fluid loss or electronic brake force distribution failure. Please stop the car as soon as safety permits, switch the engine OFF and check brake fluid level (refer to "Brake Fluid Check and Top Up" under the "Maintenance" section). If the brake fluid level appears satisfactory contact an MG Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

For manual parking brake, the lamp illuminates when the parking brake is applied and extinguishes when it is fully released. If the parking brake is not released, when the vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h, this warning lamp will flash. If the lamp remains on after the parking brake has been released, it indicates that there is a failure in the braking system. Please stop the car as soon as safety permits, switch the engine OFF and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)/ Automatic Parking Status Indicator Lamp - Red/Green *

If this lamp illuminates red, it indicates the electronic parking brake is enabled or in the process of dynamic braking. When it flashes red, it indicates the electronic parking brake has failed. Please contact the MG Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

When the auto hold system is operating to assist the driver, this lamp illuminates green.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) System Malfunction Indicator Lamp - Yellow *

If an electronic parking brake system failure is detected or the system is under diagnosis, the indicator lamp will illuminate. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) On/ Malfunction Indicator Lamp - Green/ Yellow *

Operating the HDC switch will activate the function, the system will enter the stand by mode and the warning lamp

illuminates green, the lamp will extinguish when the system is turned off. If the vehicle is under the control of HDC the green warning lamp will flash.

If the HDC system detects a fault or fails, the warning lamp illuminates yellow. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)/ Electronic Steering Column Lock (ESCL) Warning Lamp - Yellow/Red *

The warning lamp is used to indicate electric power assisted steering failure or electronic steering column lock failure.

When this lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates the electric power assisted steering system has a general failure and the performance is reduced. Please stop the car as soon as safety permits. If the lamp still illuminates after restarting the vehicle and driving for a short while, please contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

When this lamp illuminates red, it indicates that the EPS has a failure relevant to the steering angle sensor. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

When this lamp illuminates red and flashes, it

indicates the electric power assisted steering system has a severe failure and heavy steering. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

When the lamp illuminates yellow and flashes, it indicates the electric steering column lock * has a failure. Please stop the car as soon as safety permits, switch the engine OFF and contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately. If this lamp extinguishes after flashing for a while, it indicates that the steering wheel is locked, please attempt to rotate the steering wheel to remove any adverse loads.

Low Fuel Warning Lamp - Yellow



The warning lamp illuminates yellow when the fuel remaining in the fuel tank is low. If possible, please refuel before the low fuel warning lamp illuminates.

When the fuel level continues to fall, this lamp flashes. When fuel is added to the tank and the fuel level rises above the alert limit, this lamp extinguishes. If it does not extinguish, please contact an MG Authorised Repairer for service as soon as possible.

Note: When driving on steep or rough roads while the fuel level is low, the warning lamp may illuminate.

System Fault Messages Indicator - Yellow *



This indicator is used to alert the driver to the fact that there is a warning stored in the vehicle IPK system. Please refer to “Information Centre” in this section for these failures.

Active Speed Limit System Warning Lamp — Yellow *



This warning lamp illuminates if an active speed limit system failure is detected. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Active Speed Limit System Indicator — Red *



When the active speed limit system is armed or active, if the target vehicle speed is currently set, this indicator illuminates and displays the target vehicle speed value.

When the active speed limit system is working, if the current speed exceeds the set target speed, this indicator will flash, and the system will immediately reduce the speed to below the target speed. The active speed limiter only uses engine braking to reduce

speed - it is not a substitute for physical brake application. If the vehicle needs to be slowed or stopped quickly the brake pedal **MUST** be applied.

Speed Assist System Warning Indicator - Yellow *



If an Speed Assist System failure is detected, the lamp will flash yellow and then remain on after a period of time. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer.

For more information, please refer to “Driving Assist System” in “Starting & Driving” section.

Speed Assist System Speed Indicator - Red *



This lamp will illuminate when the Speed Assist System is enabled or activated. ‘NNN’ denotes the current setting value of the speed limit. If there is no speed limit value the lamp will display ‘—’ When the speed exceeds the speed limit value, this lamp flashes. Please slow down.

For more information, please refer to “Driving Assist System” in “Starting & Driving” section.

Adaptive Cruise Control System Indicator - Yellow/Green *



If the Adaptive Cruise function is enabled, the Adaptive Cruise Control System will enter the standby state, the lamp illuminates yellow.

When the Adaptive Cruise Control System operates, the lamp will illuminate green, this indicates that the Adaptive Cruise Control System is activated.

Adaptive Cruise Control System Malfunction Indicator - Yellow *



This lamp will illuminate if an Adaptive Cruise Control System failure is detected. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Forward Collision Assist System (FCW/AEB/AEBP) Indicator - Yellow*



This lamp will illuminate yellow when any function of Forward Collision Assist System (FCW/AEB/AEBP) is disabled.

If all the functions of Forward Collision Assist System (FCW/AEB/AEBP) are enabled and the lamp still illuminates, it indicates that

the system is not able to function normally. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer.

For more information, please refer to “Driving Assist System” in “Starting & Driving” section.

Lane Departure Warning System Indicator - Green/Yellow *



This lamp will illuminate yellow when the Lane Departure Warning function is enabled, the lamp will extinguish when the function is disabled.

This lamp will illuminate green when the Lane Departure Warning function is activated.

If the Lane Departure Warning System is not able to function normally the lamp will flash yellow and then remain on after a period of time. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer.

For more information, please refer to “Driving Assist System” in “Starting & Driving” section.

Lane Departure Prevention System Indicator - Green/Yellow *



This lamp will illuminate yellow when the Lane Departure Prevention function is

enabled, the lamp will extinguish when the function is disabled.

This lamp illuminates green when the Lane Departure Prevention function is activated.

If the Lane Departure Prevention System is not able to function normally the lamp will flash yellow and then remain on after a period of time. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer.

For more information, please refer to “Driving Assist System” in “Starting & Driving” section.

Lane Keeping Assist System Indicator - Green/Yellow *



This lamp will illuminate yellow when the Lane Keeping Assist function is enabled, the lamp will extinguish when the function is disabled.

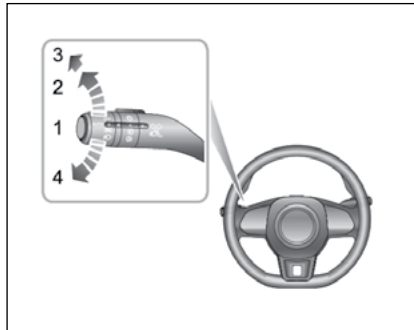
This lamp illuminates green when the Lane Keeping Assist function is activated.

If the Lane Keeping Assist System is not able to function normally the lamp will flash yellow and then remain on after a period of time. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer.

For more information, please refer to “Driving Assist System” in “Starting & Driving” section.

Lights and Switches

Master Lighting Switch



- 1 AUTO Lamp *
- 2 Side Lamps and Switch Illumination
- 3 Dipped Headlamps
- 4 Lights OFF

AUTO Lamp *

When the START/STOP Switch is in the ACC position, the auto lighting system defaults to the ON position (1). The auto lighting system will automatically switch the side lamps and switch illumination on and off according to the intensity of current ambient light.

With the START/STOP Switch switched to the ON/RUNNING position, the auto lighting system defaults to the ON position (1). The auto lighting system will automatically switch the side lamps, switch illumination and dipped headlamps on and off according to the intensity of current ambient light.

Note: *This function is realized by fitting a sensor capable of monitoring exterior lighting conditions in real time on your vehicle. The sensor is fitted in the centre of the fascia panel near the windscreen in some models. DO NOT mask or cover this area, or headlamps may automatically go on when not necessary.*

Side lamps and Switch Illumination

When the START/STOP Switch is in the ACC position, turn the master lighting switch to position 2 to operate the side lamps and switch illumination.

When the START/STOP Switch is in the ON/RUNNING position, turn the master lighting switch to position 2 to operate the daytime running lamps, rear side lamps and switch illumination.

With the START/STOP Switch in the OFF position if the lighting switch is in position 2 and the driver's door opened an audible warning will sound to alert the driver, the side lamps will remain on.

Dipped Headlamps

When the START/STOP Switch is in the ON/RUNNING position, turn the master lighting switch to position 3 to operate the dipped headlamps and side lamps.

Lights Off

Turn the master lighting switch to position 4, this will switch off all lamps, releasing the switch will allow it to return to the AUTO switch position.

Follow Me Home

After the START/STOP Switch is turned off, pull the lighting stalk switch towards the steering wheel. This will enable the Follow Me Home function, dipped beam headlamps and side lamps will illuminate depending upon the vehicle configuration. It can be set in the 'Comfort and Convenience' in the Vehicle Settings on the entertainment display.

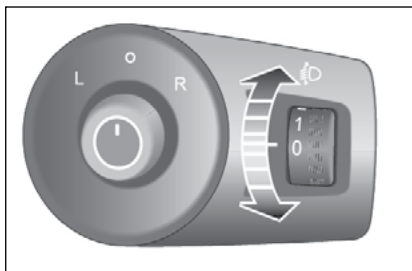
Daytime Running Lamp

The daytime running lamps turn on automatically when the START/STOP Switch is in the ON/RUNNING position. When the dipped headlamps are switched on, the daytime running lamps extinguish automatically.

Find My Car

After the vehicle has been left in a locked condition for a few minutes pressing the lock button again on the remote key will enable the Find My Car function. This function will identify the car by means of an audible and visual alert. Pressing the Lock button on the handset again will suspend this operation. Pressing the Unlock button will cancel this operation. This feature can be set via 'Comfort and Convenience' in the Vehicle Settings on the entertainment display.

Headlamp Levelling Manual Adjustment

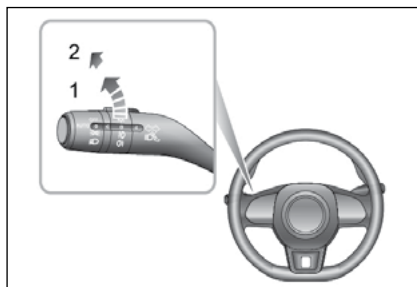


Position 0 is the initial position of the headlamp levelling adjustment switch. The headlamp levelling adjustment can be made as per the following table according to the vehicle load.

Location	Load
0	Driver, or driver & front passenger.
1	All the seats occupied with no load.
2	All the seats occupied plus an evenly distributed load in the boot, or driver with full load.
3	Driver only, plus an evenly distributed load in the boot.

Fog Lamp Switch

! *Fog lights should only be used when visibility is below 100m - other road users could be dazzled in clear conditions.*



Front Fog Lamps *

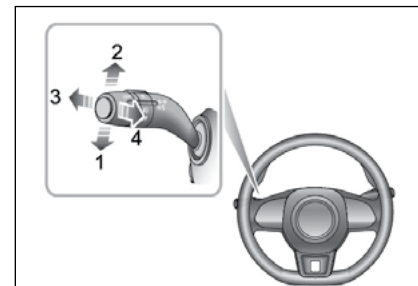
With the START/STOP Switch in the ON/ RUNNING position and the side lamps on, turn the fog lamp switch to position 1, this will turn on the front fog lamps. The indicator illuminates in the instrument panel when the front fog lamps are on.

Rear Fog Lamp

With the START/STOP Switch in the ON/ RUNNING position and the headlamps or front fog lamps on, turn the fog lamp switch to position 2, this will turn on the rear fog lamp, release the switch to allow it to return to the last position. The indicator illuminates in the instrument panel when the rear fog lamp is on.

Direction Indicator/Main Beam Switch

! *Take care not to dazzle oncoming vehicles when driving using main beam headlamps.*



Direction Indicators

Move the lever down to indicate a LEFT turn (1). Move the lever up to indicate a RIGHT turn (2). The corresponding GREEN indicator lamp in the instrument pack will flash when the turning signal lamps are working.

Rotating the steering wheel will cancel the indicator operation (small movements of the steering wheel may not operate the self cancelling). To indicate a lane change, move the lever briefly and release, the indicators will flash three times and then cancel.

Headlamp High/Low Beam Switching

With the START/STOP Switch in the ON position and the master lighting switch turned to position 3, or the auto function has switched the lights on, push the lever (3) towards the instrument panel to turn on headlamp high beams. The high beam indicator lamp in instrument pack illuminates, press the lever (3) again to switch to headlamp low beams.

High Beam Flash

To briefly flash the high beam on and off, pull the lever towards the steering wheel (4) and then release.

Smart Main Beam System *



The smart main beam system serves only as an auxiliary function. The driver must check the status of the front lamps, and turn on the front lamps when necessary.

For example: The main beam may not be turned off automatically in the following cases, thus manual switching between the main beam and dipped beam is required:

- ***The windscreen is dirty, broken or obstructed by other objects blocking the view of the sensor.***
- ***The lamps of other vehicles are missing, damaged, blocked or cannot be detected due to weather and other reasons.***
- ***When pedestrians, non-motor vehicles and other objects with no obvious light or reflected light are encountered.***
- ***When the headlamps and tail lamps of other vehicles cannot be detected due to the sensor view being impaired due undulating road conditions such as bends, dips or hills.***
- ***When the car is driving on a winding road or mountainous road.***

The Smart Main Beam System is designed to detect the light intensity information of the vehicle in front using the vehicle forward camera and switch the main beam on or off when certain conditions are met. When the smart main beam system is enabled, the smart main beam indicator in the instrument pack illuminates. After the vehicle is started, the smart main beam system enters the ready state of work.

In the case of automatic control, the system will automatically turn on the main beam when the surrounding environment is dark and there is no light detected from any vehicles ahead, or oncoming vehicles; when the surrounding environment is bright enough or the system detects the headlamps or tail lamps of the vehicle ahead or oncoming vehicles, the system will automatically turn off the main beam.

To enable the smart main beam system, the following conditions must be met:

- 1 The master lighting switch must be in the Auto position and the dipped beam lamps switched on via automatic control.
- 2 The vehicle is running and the speed is above 25mph (40km/h).
- 3 The front fog lamps are not turned on.

If the following conditions are met, the vehicle will automatically exit the smart main beam system.

- When the smart main beam system is enabled and the dipped beam lights are automatically turned on, the high beam switch is operated.
- When the smart main beam system is

enabled and the main beam lights are automatically turned on, the high beam switch is operated.

- When the smart main beam system is enabled and the main beam lights are automatically turned on, the high beam flash switch is operated.

If the system exits, quickly push the direction indicator/main beam switch (main beam 'ON') towards the instrument pack twice to enter the smart main beam system again. You can only exit two times in one ignition cycle. If you exit greater than or equal to three times, you will not be able to enable this function again in the current ignition cycle. The smart main beam system can be reactivated after the next ignition cycle.

IMPORTANT

The smart main beam function uses data from the front view camera, always keep the windscreen clean and free from residue in this area to maintain optimum performance of this system. Any damage in this area, such as stonechips must be repaired at the earliest convenience.

Auxiliary Lighting System *

Adding front fog lamps on traditional headlamps, the auxiliary lighting system aims to illuminate the blind zone at the side when the car makes a turn. With this function, the driver can find other vehicles and obstacles in advance, so as to improve the driving safety to a large extent.


Lighting Mode during Cornering

While the car is driving forward, the speed is lower than 40km/h, and the dipped beams are on, turn on the turn signal lamps or allow the steering wheel angle more than 45°, the system will automatically turn on the single side front fog lamp. Turn off the turn signal lamps or allow the steering wheel angle less than 10°, the system will exit from the lighting mode.

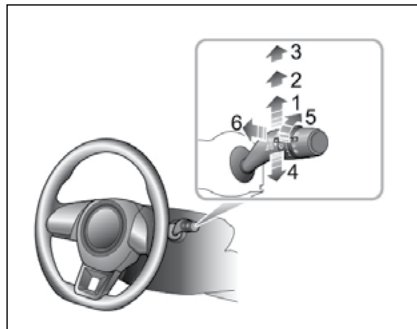
Lighting Mode during Parking

While the car is reversing and the dipped beams are on, the system will automatically turn on the front fog lamps on both sides and the reverse lamp. When the vehicle speed is higher than 15km/h, or the reverse lamp is turned off for more than 10s, the system will exit from the lighting mode.

Hazard Warning Lamp

Press the hazard warning lamp button  to turn on the hazard warning lamps. The turning signal lamps and direction indicator lamps will flash together. Press the button again to switch off the hazard warning lamps. All turning signal lamps and direction indicator lamps will stop flashing. For more details and location refer to 'Emergency Information' 'Hazard Warning Devices'.

Wipers and Washers



Windscreen Wiper Operation

The wipers and washers will only operate with the START/STOP Switch in the ACC/ON/RUNNING position. Operate the lever to select different wipe speeds:

- Intermittent wipe (1)
- Slow wipe (2)
- Fast wipe (3)
- Single wipe (4)
- Automatic wipe interval adjustment * / Rain sensor sensitivity adjustment *(5)
- Programmed wash/wipe (6)

Intermittent Wipe

By pushing the lever up to the Intermittent wipe position (1), the wipers will operate automatically. Turn the switch (5) * to adjust the intermittent wipe frequency. This speed will also change with the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the wiper frequency increases. As the vehicle speed decreases, the wiper frequency decreases.

Some models are equipped with a rain sensor fitted to the interior rear view mirror base to detect varying amounts of water on the outside of the windscreen. With automatic wipe, the vehicle will adjust the wiping speed according to the signals provided by rain sensor. Turn the switch (5) to adjust the sensitivity of rain sensor. As the sensitivity increases, the wiping interval decreases.

Note: Immediately operating the wiper one time can be achieved by increasing the sensitivity of rain sensor. If the rain sensor detects a continuous rainwater, the wiper will keep working. When no rain is detected, it is recommended to switch off automatic wipe.

Slow Wipe

By pushing the lever up to the slow wipe position (2), the wipers will operate slowly. Move the lever to re-select the wipe speed.

Fast Wipe

By pushing the lever up to the fast wipe position (3), the wipers will operate fast. Move the lever to re-select the wipe speed.

Single Wipe

Pressing the lever (4) down and releasing will operate a single wipe, if the lever is held down, the wipers will operate until the lever is released.

Note: When the car is stationary, if the bonnet is opened, the front wiper/washer will stop work immediately in some models.

IMPORTANT

- Avoid operating the wiper on a dry windscreen.
- In freezing or extremely hot weather conditions, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen/adhered to the windscreen.
- In winter, remove snow or ice from around the arms and blades, including the wiped area of the screen.

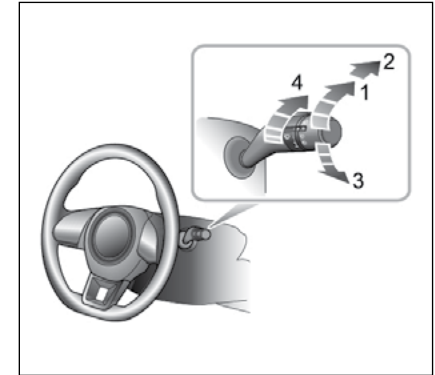
Programmed Wash/Wipe

Pulling the lever toward the steering wheel (6) will operate the windscreen washers. After a short delay, the wipers will commence operating in conjunction with the washers.

Note: *The wipers continue operating for a further three wipes after the lever is released. After several seconds, there will be a further wipe to remove any fluid draining down the screen.*

IMPORTANT

If the washers fail to deliver the screen wash solution (dirt or ice may have blocked the jets), release the lever immediately. This will prevent the wipers from operating, and the consequent risk of visibility being impaired by dirt smearing across the unwashed windscreen.

Rear Window Wiper Operation

- Intermittent wipe (1)
- Wash and wipe (2)
- Wash and wipe (3)
- Intermittent wipe frequency adjustment (4)

The rear window wiper and washer will only operate with the START/STOP Switch in the ACC/ON/RUNNING position.

Intermittent Wipe

Turn the rear window wiper switch to intermittent wipe (1), the rear window wiper will operate, after 3 consecutive wipes, the wipers will enter into intermittent mode. The time period between the wipes can be increased/decreased via the intermittent wipe frequency adjustment switch (4).

Wash and Wipe

Turn the rear window wiper switch to wash and wipe (2) position and hold, the rear window wiper and washer will operate, the rear window wiper wipes quickly. release the switch allowing it to return to intermittent wipe (1), the rear window washer will stop operating, and the wiper wipes slowly, change the stalk switch position 4 to adjust the wipe speed.

Turn the rear window wiper switch to wash and wipe (3) and hold, the rear window wiper and washer will operate. release the switch allowing it to return to OFF position, the rear window washer will stop operating, and the rear window wiper wipes for 3 times, after several seconds, the wiper will wipe once more to remove the washer fluid on the windscreen.

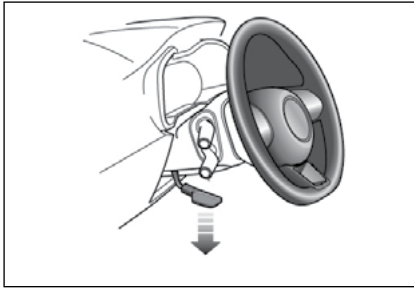
Note: When the tailgate is opened, rear window wiper operations will be disabled.

Note: When the windscreen wipers are switched on, if the shift control lever is moved to, or in the R position, the rear window wiper will operate.

Steering System

Adjustment of Steering Wheel

! *DO NOT attempt to adjust the position of the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. This is extremely dangerous.*



To adjust the angle of the steering wheel to suit your driving position:

- 1 Fully release the locking lever (as indicated by the arrow).
- 2 Hold the steering wheel in both hands and tilt the steering column up or down to move the wheel into the most comfortable position.

- 3 Once a comfortable driving position has been selected, pull the locking lever fully up to lock the steering wheel into its new position.

Electric Power Steering

! *If the electric power steering fails or cannot operate the steering will appear very heavy, this will affect driving safety.*

The electric power steering system only works when the vehicle is started. The system operates via a motor with assistance levels automatically adjusted based on vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle.

IMPORTANT

Holding the steering wheel on full lock for long periods will result in a reduction in power assistance causing a heavier feel to the steering for a short period of time.

Steering Mode Switching

The electric power steering system provides 3 different steering modes:

- 1 Normal: provides moderate power assistance.
- 2 Urban: provides a high level of assistance, with a light feel.
- 3 Dynamic: provides low level power assistance, with a heavier feel.

Please start the vehicle when the vehicle is stationary and enter the entertainment to switch the steering mode.

Horn



Press the horn button area on the steering wheel (as indicated by the arrow) to operate the horn.

Note: The vehicle horn switch location and the driver's airbag are located in close proximity on the steering wheel. The illustration shows the position of the horn switches, please ensure that you press in this area to avoid any potential conflict with the operation of the airbag.

IMPORTANT

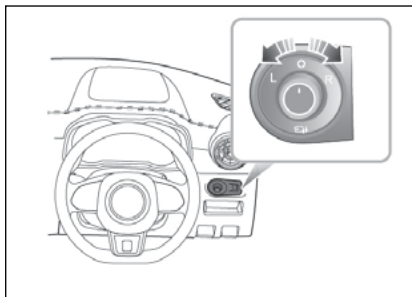
To avoid possible SRS issues, please do not press with excessive force or hit the airbag cover when operating the horn.

Mirrors

Door Mirrors

Note: Objects viewed in door mirrors may appear further away than they actually are.


Electric Door Mirror Glass Adjustment



- The mirror adjustment function will work with the START/STOP Switch in all modes, including OFF, ACC and ON/RUNNING.
- Rotate the knob to select left (L) or right (R) rearview mirror.
- Move the knob in the desired direction to adjust the angle of the exterior mirror glass.

- Upon completion of the adjustment, rotate the knob back to the central position, this will ensure no accidental adjustment of the mirror.

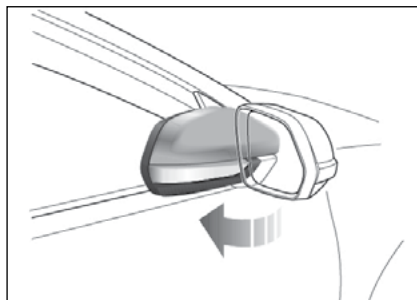
Heating Elements *

The door mirrors have integral heating elements which disperse ice or mist from the glass. The heating elements operate while the Heated Rear Window  is switched on.

Note: The heating elements of rear window and mirror will only work when the engine is running.

Mirror Folding

The mirrors can be folded back towards the side windows into a 'park' position to enable the car to negotiate narrow openings and avoid collisions.



Manual Folding of Door Mirror *

For vehicles not fitted with the electric door mirror fold option, the exterior mirrors can only be folded backwards manually.

Electric Folding of Door Mirror *

For vehicles fitted with electric door mirror folding, rotate the knob to the middle position, and push the

knob down. The door mirrors will be folded automatically. Pushing the knob downwards again will return the mirrors to their original position.

Operating the key fob lock/unlock buttons will fold/unfold the door mirrors.

Note: *Electrical folding door mirrors that have been moved from their positions by manual or accidental means must be reset by operating the knob to complete fold and deployment one time.*

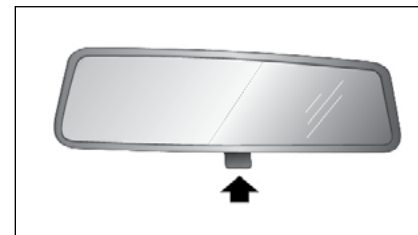
IMPORTANT

- Door mirror glass adjustments and door mirror folding are operated by electrical motors. Operating them directly by hand may damage the internal components.
- Washing or flushing door mirrors with high pressure water jets or car washes may result in electrical motor failure.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the body of the interior rearview mirror to achieve the best possible view. The anti-dazzle function of the interior rearview mirror helps to reduce glare from the headlamps of following vehicles at night.

Manual Anti-dazzle Interior Rearview Mirror



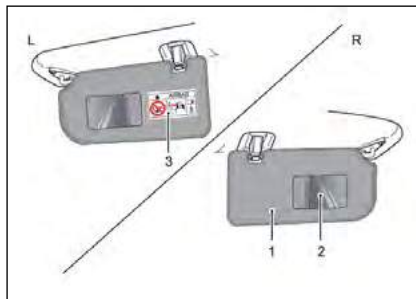
Move the lever at the base of the mirror forward to 'dip' the mirror and achieve the anti-dazzle function. Normal visibility is restored by pulling the lever back again.

Note: *In some circumstances, the view reflected in a 'dipped' manual mirror can confuse the driver as to the precise location of following vehicles.*

Sunvisor

! *The vanity mirror on the driver side should only be used when the car is stationary.*

Sunvisors (1) are arranged on the roof ahead of both the driver and the front passenger. Some models have vanity mirror (2), depending on the vehicle configuration. For the models which have vanity mirror, pull the sunvisor downward and slide the cover aside to use the vanity mirror.

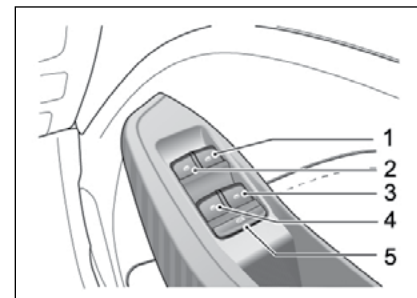


Note: *Warnings and instructions on use of child restraint (3) are attached to both sides of the passenger sunvisor.*

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraints on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur. Refer to 'Disabling the Passenger Airbag'.

Windows

Power Operated Window Switch



- 1 Front Right Window Switch
- 2 Front Left Window Switch
- 3 Rear Right Window Switch
- 4 Rear Left Window Switch
- 5 Rear Window Isolation Switch

Window Operation

! *When the window is up or down, ensure the safety of the personnel in the vehicle, especially the children, to prevent being pinched by the window.*

Push the switch (1-4) down to lower, and pull the switch up to raise the window. The window will stop moving as soon as the switch is released (unless the 'One-Touch' function is active).

Note: *The front and rear passenger windows can also be operated by individual window switches, mounted on each door. The rear window switches will not be operated if the rear window isolation switch has been activated.*

Note: *The electric window can be operated with the vehicle power system in the ACC, ON and RUNNING positions. (For safety: doors should be closed).*

Rear Window Isolation Switch

Press the button (5) to isolate the rear window controls, press again to restore control.

Note: *It is recommended that you ISOLATE the rear window switches when carrying a child.*

Note: *Please operate the windows correctly to avoid danger, the driver shall instruct the occupants on the use of windows and safety precautions.*

"One-Touch" Down

The driver's window control switch (1) has 2 positions. Short press the window control switch to the "2" position and release. The window automatically descends to fully open. Window movement can be stopped at desired position at any time by briefly operating the switch again.

"One Touch" Up with "Anti-Trap"

The driver's window control switch (1) has the "one-touch" up function. Lifting the switch to the "2" position for a short time and releasing will automatically close the window completely. Window movement can be stopped at a desired position at any time

by briefly operating the switch again.

The "Anti-Trap" function is a safety feature which prevents the window from fully closing if an obstruction is sensed - if this happens the window will open slightly to allow the obstruction to be removed.

Note: *DO NOT operate the power window controls continuously several times in a short time frame, otherwise the power window controls may be disabled to protect the motor. If this occurs, please wait a few seconds until the motor cools down. Do not disconnect the negative battery cable while waiting for the motor to cool down.*

Note: *If the battery is cut off during lifting and lowering of the window, One Touch and Anti-Trap mode may be not operational. In this case, Fully open the window, then raise the window to the fully closed position by lifting the switch briefly and consecutively. When the window is fully closed, hold the switch in the close position for a further 5 seconds. Then fully open the window again, press the switch for another 5 seconds, One Touch and Anti-Trap mode will be resumed.*

Sunroof *

The sunroof consists of two glass panels, only the front section can be opened by sliding or tilting. The sunshade can be opened or closed as a complete unit.

Instructions

! ***DO NOT allow passengers to lean out of an open sunroof whilst the vehicle is in motion. Injuries may occur from objects such as tree branches.***

! ***Safety of the vehicle occupants must be observed at all times. DO NOT allow limbs to be placed in the moving path of the sunroof at any time, injury may occur.***

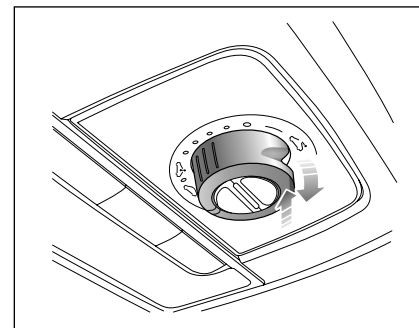
- Avoid fully opening the sunroof during rain showers.
- It is advised not to open the sunroof at high speeds.
- Where possible, please clean off any residual water or raindrops off the sunroof prior to opening. Failure to do so may result in water entering the car.

- DO NOT use abrasive materials to clean the sunroof glass. Use only propriety glass cleaner or alcohol based solvent.
- DO NOT hold the operating switch in the open/close position for any length of time after operation is complete, this could damage the electrical components.
- Clean the sunroof regularly to maintain operation and performance. Visit an MG Authorised Repairer for service as required.

Sunroof Operation (Knob Switch) *

The sunroof will operate when the START/STOP Switch is set to ACC or ON/RUNNING.

Sunroof Glass Operation



Opening the Sunroof Glass using Tilt

With the sunroof glass fully closed, press the rear part of the switch in the direction of the arrow as indicated in the graphic to fully 'tilt' the glass to the open position. Operation can be interrupted at the desired point by pressing the switch again.

Closing the Sunroof Glass from Tilt

Pull down the rear of the switch to automatically close the sunroof in the direction as indicated by the arrow. Briefly pull down on the switch again will interrupt the operation at the desired position.

To manually close the sunroof, pull down the rear of the switch in the direction as indicated by the arrow and hold, until the sunroof reaches the desired position.

Opening the Sunroof Glass by Sliding



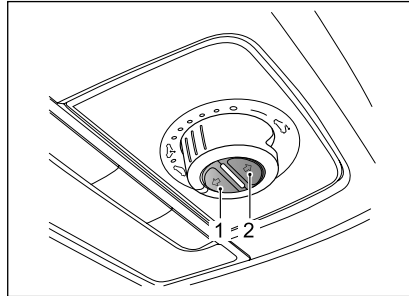
Rotate the switch completely clockwise and hold until the sunroof slides fully open. To partially open the sunroof, place the switch in the required range position.

Closing the Sunroof Glass by Sliding



Rotate the switch completely counterclockwise, the sunroof will slide fully closed. To partially close the sunroof, place the switch in the required range position.

Sunroof Sunshade Operation



Opening the sunshade.

Short press the button (2) to automatically open the sunshade to its full extent. Short press the button at any time to cancel the request and stop the sunshade at that position.

To manually open the sunshade, press and hold the button until the sunshade reaches the desired position, then release it.

Closing the Sunshade

Short press the button (1) to automatically close the sunshade completely. Short press the button at any time to cancel the request and stop the sunshade at that position.

To manually close the sunshade, press and hold the button until the sunshade reaches the desired position, and release it.

Note: If the vehicle is to be parked in direct sunlight for a length of time it is recommended that the sunshade be closed to protect the interior trim components from damage, and to help regulate the in car temperatures.

Anti-pinch Function

The sunroof and sunshade feature an “Anti-Pinch” function, this is a safety feature which prevents the sunroof or sunshade from fully closing whilst in the automatic mode if an obstruction is sensed - if this happens the sunroof/sunshade will open slightly to allow the obstruction to be removed.

Forcibly Closing the Sunroof (over-riding the anti pinch)

To forcibly close the sunroof glass after an anti-pinch intervention, gently pull the rear of the switch downwards within 5 seconds and hold in position until the sunroof glass is fully closed.

Note: The anti pinch function is suspended during this operation.

Forcibly Closing the Sunshade (over-riding the anti pinch)

To forcibly close the sunshade after an anti-pinch intervention, press the close button within 5 seconds and hold it until the sunshade is fully closed.

Note: The anti pinch function is suspended during this operation.

Sunroof Initialisation

In the event of a power failure or battery disconnection when the sunroof glass or sunshade is in motion, the sunroof/sunshade will require initialisation when the power is restored.

To carry out the sunroof glass initialisation operation:

Fully close the glass - gently pull the rear of the switch downward and hold in position for 10 seconds, the sunroof will open a preset amount and stop, it will then close automatically- the sunroof glass is then initialised. During the whole process, the switch must remain in the pulled down position.

To carry out the sunshade initialisation operation:

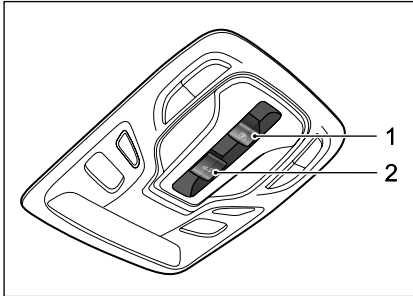
Fully close the sunshade - press the close switch and hold in position for 10 seconds, the sunshade will open a preset amount and stop, it will then close automatically- the sunshade is then initialised. During the whole process, the switch must remain pressed.

Thermal Protection

To prevent the sunroof glass motor and the sunshade motor from being overheated and damaged, the motors are designed with a thermal protection function.

After the thermal protection is active, the sunroof can only be closed, and will not respond to other operations. After the motor has cooled down and exits the thermal protection state, the sunroof can be operated until the next thermal protection event.

Sunroof Operation (Push Switch) *

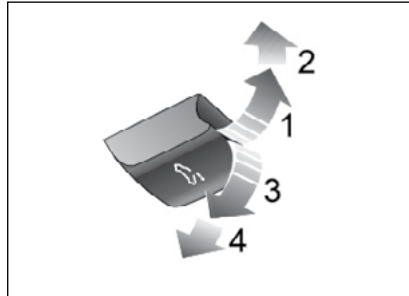


The sunroof will operate when the START/STOP Switch is set to ACC or ON/RUNNING.

Switch 1 is used to operate the sunroof sunshade, and switch 2 is used to operate the sunroof glass. The method by which the sunroof will open function is identified by the icons on the switches.

Sunroof Glass Operation

Open the Sunroof Glass by Tilting



Push the sunroof glass switch upward to the 1st position (1) and hold, the sunroof will tilt open manually. You can stop the movement of the sunroof at any time by releasing the switch.

Push the glass switch with slightly harder force to move the switch to its 2nd position (2) and then release, the sunroof will automatically open completely.

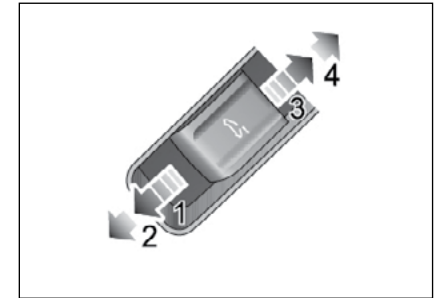
Close the Sunroof Glass by Tilting

Pull the sunroof glass switch downward to the 1st position (3) and hold, the sunroof will close manually. You can stop the movement

of the sunroof at any time by releasing the switch.

Pull the glass switch with slightly harder force to move the switch to its 2nd position (4) and then release, the sunroof will automatically close completely.

Open the Sunroof Glass by Sliding



Push the sunroof glass switch backward to the 1st position (3) and hold, the sunroof will slide open manually. You can stop the movement of the sunroof at any time by releasing the switch.

Push the glass switch backward with slightly harder force to move the switch to its 2nd position (4) and then release, the sunroof

will automatically open fully. You can stop the movement of the sunroof at any time by pushing the switch backward again.

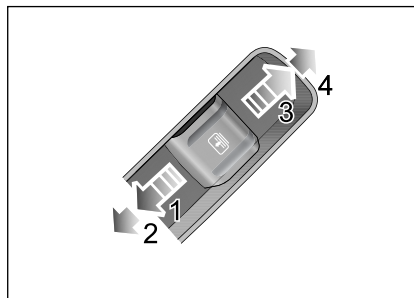
Close the Sunroof Glass by Sliding

Push the sunroof glass switch forward to the 1st position (1) and hold, the sunroof will close manually. You can stop the movement of the sunroof at any time by releasing the switch.

Push the glass switch forward with slightly harder force to move the switch to its 2nd position (2) and then release, the sunroof will automatically fully close. You can stop the movement of the sunroof at any time by pushing the switch forward again.

Note: Due to the design of the sunroof there may be occasions where using the manual close function provides a visual impression that the glass is fully closed, this may not be the case, it is recommended to use the 2nd position to automatically close the sunroof glass when it needs to be completely closed

Sunroof Sunshade Operation



Open the Sunshade

Push the sunroof sunshade switch backward to the 1st position (3) and hold, the sunshade will slide open manually. You can stop the movement of the sunshade at any time by releasing the switch.

Push the sunshade switch backward with slightly harder force to move the switch to its 2nd position (4) and then release, the sunshade will automatically open fully. You can stop the movement of the sunshade at any time by pushing the switch backward again.

Close the Sunshade

Push the sunroof sunshade switch forward to the 1st position (1) and hold, the sunshade will close manually. You can stop the movement of the sunshade at any time by releasing the switch.

Push the sunshade switch forward with slightly harder force to move the switch to its 2nd position (2) and then release, the sunshade will automatically fully close. You can stop the movement of the sunshade at any time by pushing the switch forward again.

Note: If the vehicle is to be parked in direct sunlight for a length of time it is recommended that the sunshade be closed to protect the interior trim components from damage, and to help regulate the in car temperatures.

Anti-pinch Function

The sunroof and sunshade feature an “Anti-Pinch” function, this is a safety feature which prevents the sunroof or sunshade from fully closing whilst in the automatic mode if an obstruction is sensed - if this happens the sunroof/sunshade will open slightly to allow the obstruction to be removed.

Forcibly Closing the Sunroof (over-riding the anti pinch) To forcibly close the sunroof glass after an anti-pinch intervention, gently slide the glass switch forwards to the 1st position and hold in position until the sunroof glass is fully closed.

Note:*The anti pinch function is suspended during this operation.*

Forcibly Closing the Sunshade (over-riding the anti pinch)

To forcibly close the sunshade that has reopened due to activation of anti-pinch function: gently slide the sunshade switch forwards to the 1st position and hold it until the sunshade closes fully.

Note:*The anti pinch function is suspended during this operation.*

Linkage between Sunshade and Sunroof Glass

To prevent the sunshade from being exposed, the sunshade will move together with the sunroof glass as one unit when the sunroof is opened. To close the sunshade, please close the sunroof glass first.

Sunroof Initialisation

In the event of a power failure or battery disconnection when the sunroof glass or sunshade is in motion, the sunroof/sunshade will require initialisation when the power is restored.

To carry out the sunroof glass initialisation operation:

Fully close the glass -gently slide the switch forward to the 2nd position and hold in position for 10 seconds. The sunroof will open a preset amount and stop, it will then close automatically - the sunroof glass is then initialised. During the whole process, the switch must remain in the 2nd position.

To carry out the sunshade initialisation operation:

Fully close the sunshade -slide the close switch forward to the 2nd position and hold in position for 10 seconds. The sunshade will open a preset amount and stop, it will then close automatically - the sunshade is then initialised. During the whole process, the switch must remain in the 2nd position.

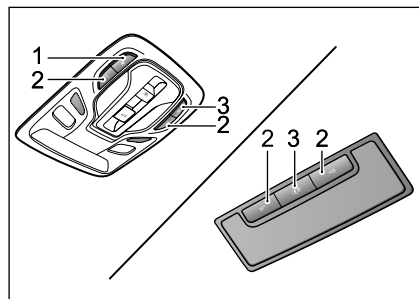
Thermal Protection

To prevent the sunroof glass motor and the sunshade motor from being overheated and damaged, the motors are designed with a thermal protection function.

After the thermal protection is active, the sunroof can only be closed, and will not respond to other operations. After the motor has cooled down and exits the thermal protection state, the sunroof can be operated until the next thermal protection event.

Interior Lights

According to different configurations of the vehicles, the front interior lamp has different shape.



- 1 Main Manual Control Switch of Front/Rear Interior Lamps
- 2 Manual Control Button of Corresponding Front Interior Lamp
- 3 Automatic Control Button

Press switch 1 to turn on the front and rear interior lamps, press again to turn off.

Press either of the buttons 2 to turn on a corresponding front interior lamp, press again to turn off.

In addition to the manual control of the interior lamps, some operating conditions will activate an automatic control function. Press button 3 to turn on or turn off the automatic control.

Interior light illumination occurs automatically whenever the following occur.

- The car is unlocked.
- Any door is opened.
- The vehicle power system is switched off, providing the vehicle light sensor detects that the ambient light level is low or the sidelights have been illuminated during the previous 30 seconds.

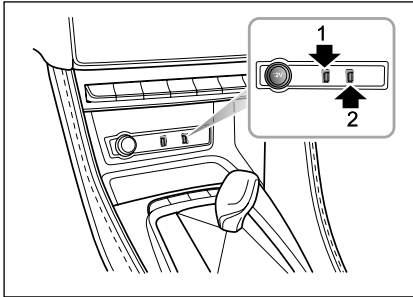
Note: *If a door is open for more than a certain period of time, the front interior lamp will be switched off automatically to avoid battery drain.*

Power Socket

! Please ensure the socket blanking plug is inserted when the power socket is not in use. This will ensure no debris or foreign objects enter the socket preventing its use or cause short circuits.

! The 12V power socket has a voltage rating of 12V, and the maximum power of 120 Watt, please **DO NOT** use any electrical appliance that exceeds this rating.

! Extended use of the accessory power socket and USB socket when the engine is switched off will cause premature discharging of the vehicle battery.

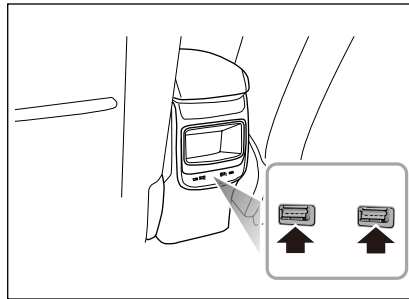


The 12V power socket is located under the shift control knob assembly in the centre console. It can be used as a power supply when the START/STOP Switch is in the ACC or ON/RUNNING positions when the blanking plug is removed.

Located to the right of the power socket are two USB ports. Both of them can be used to provide a 5V power supply or a data transmission connection.

Note: The vehicle is not supplied with a cigar lighter. If required please contact your local MG Authorised Repairer.

There are two USB ports located at the rear of the centre console, these provide 5V voltage when serving as the power outlet.



There is also one USB port located in the rear view mirror mounting trim cover, this provides a 5V power source.

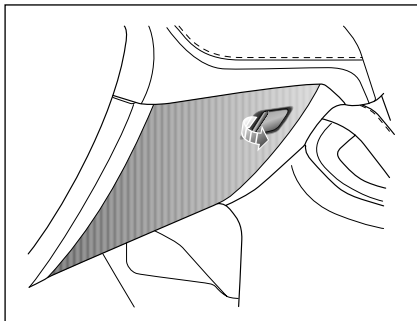
Note: Due to differences in configuration the charging function of the USB port will be slower.

Storage Devices

Instructions

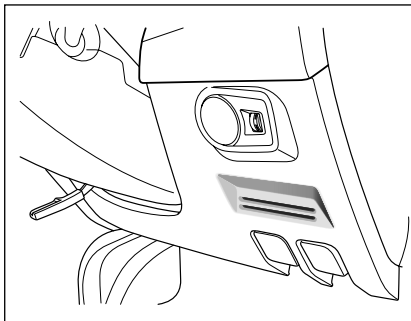
- Please close all storage devices when the vehicle is in motion. Leaving these storage devices open may cause personal injury in cases of a sudden start-off, emergency braking and a car accident.
- Do not place flammable materials such as liquid or lighters in any storage devices. The heat in hot conditions may ignite flammable materials and lead to a fire.

Glove Box



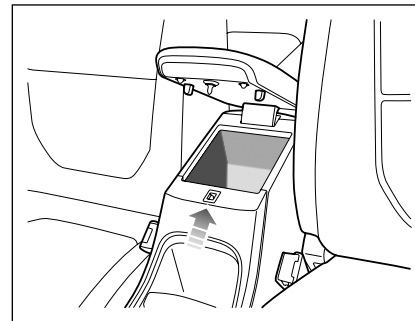
To open the glove box, pull the handle on the glove box cover (as indicated by the arrow). Push the box cover forward to close the glove box. Make sure the glove box is fully closed when the vehicle is in motion.

Card Box



Located in the driver side lower dash trim panel.

Centre Console Armrest Box

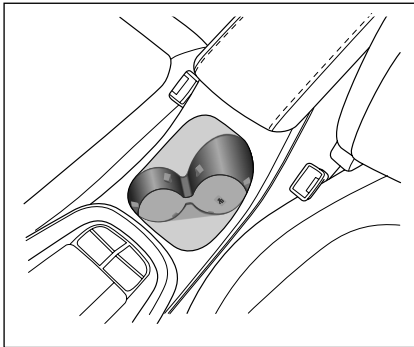


Lift the armrest (arrowed) to open the compartment cover. Put the cover down to close it.

Cup Holder

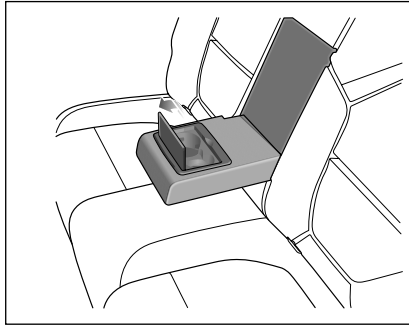
- !** *Do not place hot drinks in the cup holder whilst driving. Spillage may result in personal injury or damage.*

Centre Console Cup Holder*



The centre console cup holder is situated at the front end of the centre console armrest assembly.

Rear Armrest and Rear Cup Holder*



Fold forward to open the rear armrest. There is a cup holder at the front of the armrest. Open the cover to place the cups.

Roof Luggage Rack *

- !** *Roof loads **MUST NOT** exceed the maximum authorised load. This may lead to injury or vehicle damage.*
- !** *Loose or improperly fixed loads may fall from the roof luggage rack and lead to an accident or cause people injury.*
- !** *When heavy or large items are carried on the roof luggage rack it may lead to changes in steering, handling and braking characteristics. Please avoid sharp manoeuvres, heavy braking and excessive acceleration.*

Pay attention to the following in using the roof luggage rack:

- Secure loads toward the front of the roof as far as possible. distribute loads evenly.
- **DO NOT** use automatic car washes with loads on the roof luggage rack.
- The overall height of the car is different when loads are fitted to the roof luggage rack. Please ensure there is adequate clearance when entering tunnels and garages.

- Ensure the loads carried by the roof luggage rack do not impede operation of the sunroof, roof antenna or tailgate opening.
- When installing or removing a piece of loading equipment, follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the loading equipment.

Maximum Authorised Load for the Roof

The maximum authorised load for the roof is 75 kg, this includes the weight of the roof loads and that of the loading equipment installed.

Ensure you are aware of the weight of loads, and weigh them when necessary. Never exceed the maximum authorised load for the roof.

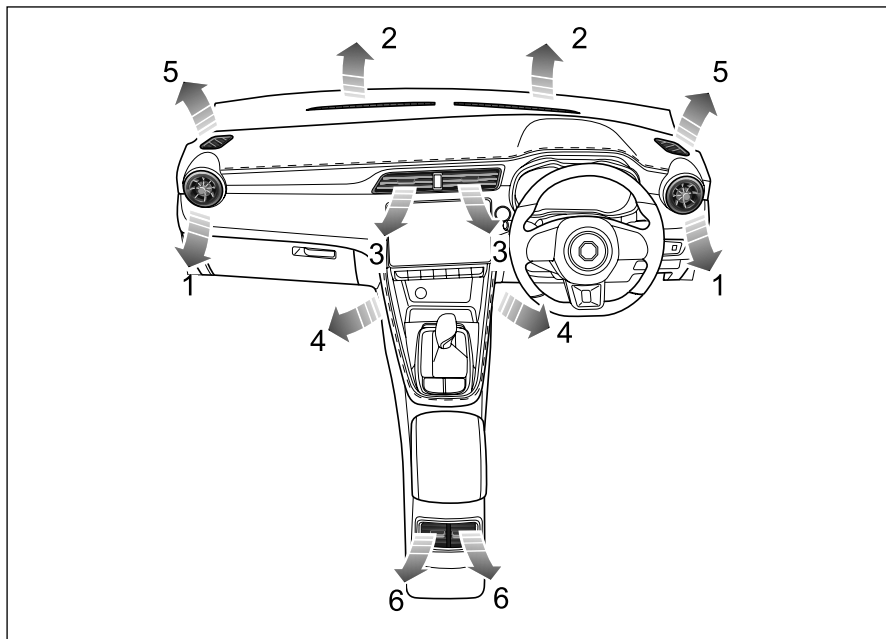
Periodical Check

Always check the condition of the bolt connectors and fastenings before use. Periodically check the bolt connectors and fastenings for security.

Air Conditioning and Audio Systems

Ventilation.....	48
A/C Control Panel.....	50
A/C Control Interface - Non Connected Car *.....	51
A/C Control Interface - Connected Car *.....	54
Entertainment Player.....	56

Ventilation



- 1 Side Vents
- 2 Windscreen/Defrost Vents
- 3 Centre Vent
- 4 Front Footwell Vents
- 5 Front Side Window Vents
- 6 Centre Console Vents

The air conditioning system is used to adjust the temperature, speed, humidity and cleanliness of the air in the car. Fresh air is drawn in through the air intake grille at the base of the front windscreen and A/C filter.

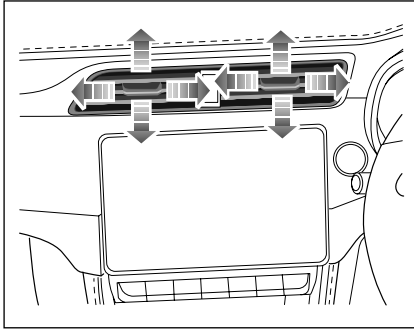
Always keep the air intake grille clear of obstructions such as leaves, snow or ice.

A/C Filter

The A/C filter is used to filter air. To remain fully effective, the filter should be replaced at the recommended service interval.

Vents

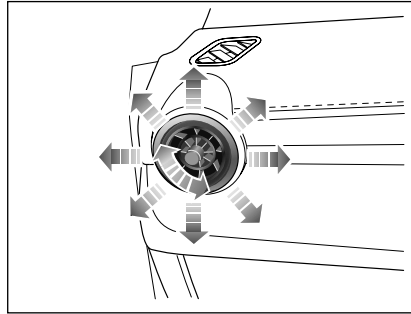
Centre Vents



Slide the button in the centre of the louvres to the left or right to open or close the vent.

Toggle the button at the centre of each vent up and down, left and right to regulate the air direction.

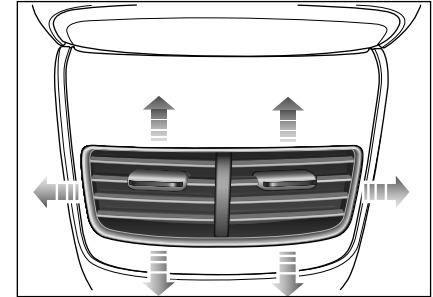
Side Vents



Rotate the centre thumb-wheel clockwise or anti-clockwise to open or close the vent.

Toggle the centre thumb-wheel up, down, left or right to adjust the air direction.

Centre Console Vents

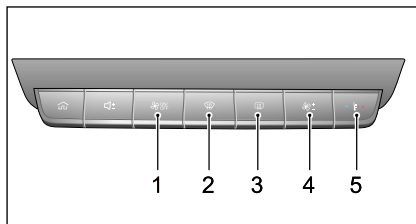


Slide the button in the centre of the louvres to the left or right to open or close the vent.

Toggle the button at the centre of each vent up and down, left and right to regulate the air direction.


A/C Control Panel

Control Panel




- 1 A/C Control Shortcut
- 2 Defrost/Demist Button
- 3 Heated Rear Window Button
- 4 Blower Speed Control Button
- 5 Temperature Control Button

A/C Control Shortcut

 Short press the A/C control shortcut to display the air conditioning interface on the infotainment screen.

Long press the A/C control shortcut to switch the system on, all functions will revert to the state before shutdown. Long press again to switch off.


Defrost/Demist


 Press Defrost/Demist Button on the control panel, the indicators on the button and display illuminate, the A/C cooling and external circulation functions are switched on, and the system enters the defrost/demist function to clear the windshield and side window.

Press again to switch off. The indicator will go off and the system will return to the previous state.


Whilst the defrost/demist is selected, operate the A/C on/off button to turn the compressor on/off; operate the air recirculation button to switch between internal recirculation and external circulation; operation of either of these functions will not affect the defrost/demist function; operation of any other air distribution modes will quit defrost/demist.

Heated Rear Window


 **The heating elements on the inside of the rear window are easily damaged. DO NOT scrape or scratch the inside of the glass. DO NOT stick labels over the heating elements.**

 Press the Heated Rear Window Button to switch the function on or off. The button indicator illuminates when the function is on, and is extinguished when the function is off. The heated rear window features a timer function and will automatically switch off after a preset time. To continue to use the heated rear window, operate the button again.

Blower Speed Control Button

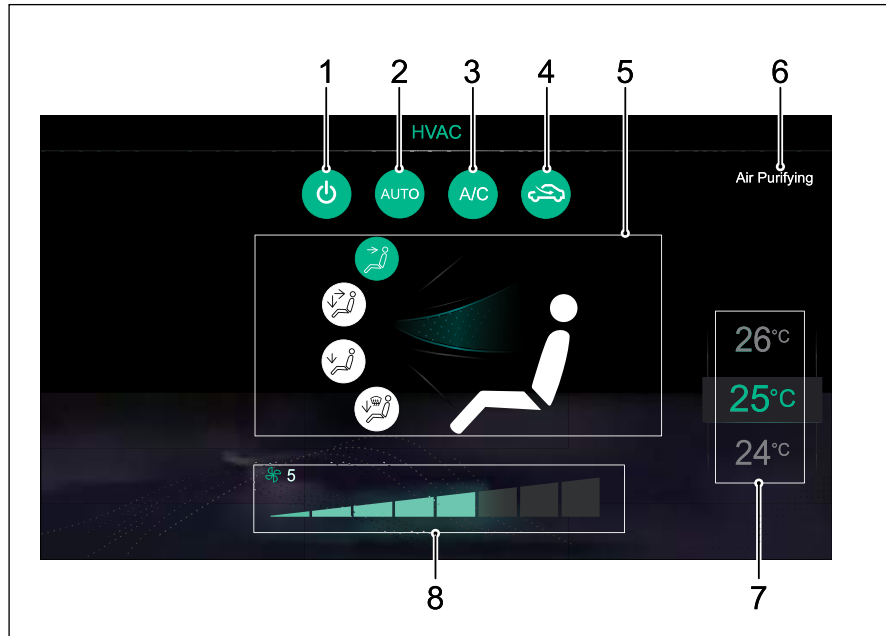
 Press the blower speed control button upward or downward to regulate the blower speed.

Temperature Control Button

 Press the temperature control button upward or downward to regulate the temperature of the air supplied by the vents.

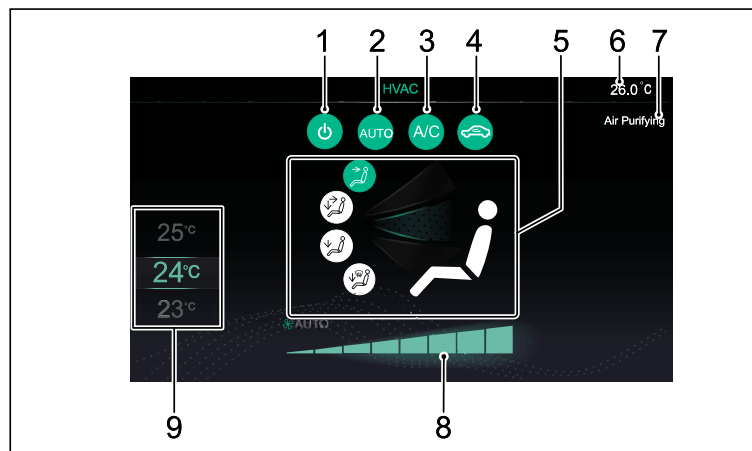
A/C Control Interface - Non Connected Car *

Control Interface



- 1 System On/Off
- 2 Auto Mode
- 3 Cooling On/Off
- 4 Air Circulation Mode
- 5 Air Distribution Mode
- 6 Air Purifying Display
- 7 Temperature Control
- 8 Blower Speed Control

Control Interface - MY22



- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 System On/Off | 8 Temperature Control |
| 2 Auto Mode | 9 Blower Speed Control |
| 3 Cooling On/Off | |
| 4 Air Circulation Mode | |
| 5 Air Distribution Mode | |
| 6 Outside Temperature Display | |
| 7 Air Purifying Display | |

System On/Off

Touch the system On/Off touch button to switch the system on or off.

Auto Mode

Set the target temperature required and then press the AUTO touch button to enable the auto mode function. In auto mode, the air distribution mode, blower speed and so on are automatically adjusted to reach and maintain the required temperature.

The blower speed control will by default indicate full speed in auto mode.

Manually adjust the air distribution mode or blower speed to exit auto mode. In this case the AUTO indicator will extinguish.

Note: To ensure the auto mode operates efficiently, all windows and the sunroof must be closed and the air inlet grille must be clear of obstructions. In addition, the A/C Auto control sensor should not be covered.


Cooling On/Off


Touch the cooling On/Off touch button to operate the cooling function.


Note: A small amount of water may remain in the air conditioner after usage, this may produce a peculiar smell. If this is a particular issue, it is recommended to switch off the cooling function and run the blower for a while.

Air Circulation Mode

Touch the air recirculation mode touch button to switch between air recirculation modes.

 During internal recirculation, the air conditioning system circulates the air inside the car to meet the requirements of rapid cooling or heating, and at the same time, it can prevent the entry of traffic fumes.









 During the external circulation, the air conditioning system draws air from outside the vehicle to ensure fresh air enters the vehicle.

 During automatic circulation, the air conditioning system can automatically adjust the internal recirculation or external circulation according to the situation.

Note: Leaving the system in internal recirculation mode can cause the windscreen to mist. If this happens, turn on the defrost/demist mode.

Air Distribution Mode

Select the corresponding Air Distribution Mode Touch Button as required to regulate the air distribution mode.

Touch Button	Icons on Interface	Air Distribution Mode
		To 'face'
		To 'face' + 'feet'
		To 'feet'
		To 'feet' + 'windscreen'

To 'face'. Directs air to the centre, centre console and side vents.

To 'face' + 'feet'. Directs air to the centre, centre console, side and footwell vents.

To 'feet'. Directs air to the footwell vents.

Note: In this mode, a small amount of airflow will be directed to the side, front side window and windscreen/defrost Vents.

To 'feet' + 'windscreen'. Directs air to the footwell, windscreen/defrost and front side window vents.

Note: In this mode, a small amount of airflow will be directed to the side vents.

Temperature Control

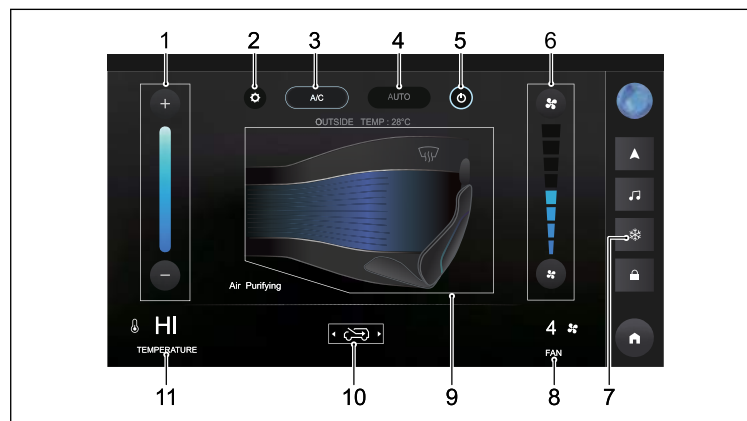
Touch the temperature control touch button to regulate the temperature of the air supplied by the vents.

Blower Speed Control

Touch the blower speed control touch button to regulate the blower speed.

A/C Control Interface - Connected Car*

Control Interface



- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1 Temperature Control | 7 A/C Shortcut Key(Quick access to control interface) |
| 2 A/C Setting | 8 Blower Speed Display |
| 3 Cooling On/Off | 9 Air Distribution Mode |
| 4 Auto Mode | 10 Air Circulation Mode |
| 5 System On/Off | 11 Temperature Display |
| 6 Blower Speed Control | |

Temperature Control

Touch the temperature control touch button to regulate the temperature of the air supplied by the vents.

Cooling On/Off

Touch the cooling On/Off touch button to operate the cooling function.

Note: A small amount of water may remain in the air conditioner after usage, this may produce a peculiar smell. If this is a particular issue, it is recommended to switch off the cooling function and run the blower for a while.

Auto Mode

Set the target temperature required and then press the AUTO touch button to enable the auto mode function. In auto mode, the air distribution mode, blower speed and so on are automatically adjusted to reach and maintain the required temperature.

The blower speed control will by default indicate full speed in auto mode.

Manually adjust the air distribution mode or blower speed to exit auto mode. In this case the AUTO indicator will extinguish.

Note: To ensure the auto mode operates efficiently, all windows and the sunroof must be closed and the air inlet grille must be clear of obstructions. In addition, the A/C Auto control sensor should not be covered.

System On/Off

Touch the system On/Off touch button to switch the system on or off.

Blower Speed Control

Touch the blower speed control touch button to regulate the blower speed.

Air Distribution Mode

Select the corresponding Air Distribution Mode Touch Button as required to regulate the air distribution mode.

Touch Zone	Air Distribution Mode
	To 'Face'
	To 'Face + Feet'
	To 'Feet'
	To 'Feet + Windscreen'
	To 'windscreen'

To 'Face'. Directs airflow to the side and centre vents.

To 'Face + Feet'. Directs air to footwell, side and centre vents.

To 'Feet'. Directs air to footwell vents.

Note: *In this mode, a small amount of airflow will be directed to the side, front side window and front windscreen vents.*

To 'Feet + Windscreen'. Directs air to the footwell, front windscreen and front side window vents.

Note: *In this mode, a small amount of airflow will be directed to the side vents.*

To 'windscreen'. Directs air to the windscreen/defrost and front side window vents.

Note: *In this mode, a small amount of airflow will be directed to the side vents.*

Air Circulation Mode

Touch the air recirculation mode touch button to switch between air recirculation modes.



During internal recirculation, the air conditioning system circulates the air inside the car to meet the requirements of rapid cooling or heating, and at the same time, it can prevent the entry of traffic fumes.



During the external circulation, the air conditioning system draws air from outside the vehicle to ensure fresh air enters the vehicle.



During automatic circulation, the air conditioning system can automatically adjust the internal recirculation or external circulation according to the situation.

Note: *Leaving the system in internal recirculation mode can cause the windscreen to mist. If this happens, turn on the defrost/demist mode.*

Entertainment Player

Important Safety Information

- Do not attempt to refit, service or modify the entertainment system by yourself, for there are high-voltage components in the device, which may cause electric shock. For internal inspection, adjustment or repair, please contact a local MG Authorised Repairer.
- The entertainment system cannot come into contact with any liquid or foreign object; if any of them enters the system by accident, please park the vehicle safely and turn off the START STOP Switch immediately and contact a local MG Authorised Repairer for service. Do not use the entertainment system in this case, as it may cause a fire, electric shock, or other failure.
- If you notice smoke, abnormal noise or odour from the entertainment system, or any other abnormal signs on the screen, turn off the START STOP Switch immediately and contact a local MG Authorised Repairer for service. Do not use the entertainment system in this case, as it may cause permanent damage to the system.

- It is strictly prohibited from operating the entertainment system when the vehicle is travelling, to avoid affecting driving safety due to inattention. Please park the vehicle in a safe place and apply the parking brake before making the necessary adjustments or watching video images.
- Extreme temperatures will affect the normal operation of the entertainment system. Prolonged parking in direct sunlight or cold places may result in abnormal operation of the system. Once the internal temperature returns to the normal range, the system will resume normal function. If not, please contact a local MG Authorised Repairer for service.
- To avoid running out of battery power, it is recommended to start the vehicle when using the entertainment system, otherwise the vehicle will not start because the battery is exhausted.
- When using a mobile phone, keep the antenna of the mobile phone away from the screen to prevent interruption of the video signal due to spots, colour stripes, etc. on the screen.

Cautions for Using Screen

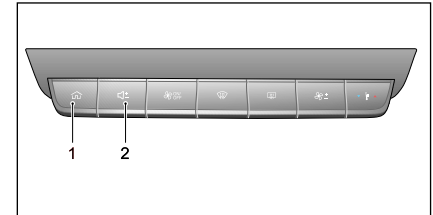
- To protect the screen against damage, always touch panel keys with your finger.
- Do not use the screen when the temperature is beyond the operating temperature range (-30°C to 85°C).
- Do not make drag-and-drop operation or press the screen hard, otherwise scratches and damages may occur.
- To clean the screen, power off the system first, then wipe the screen with a dry soft cloth carefully. Do not use irritative or abrasive chemical cleaners.

Additional Notes

- Some types of external storage devices may not be recognised. This may result in the files not being played or displayed normally.
- Because of file characteristics, file format, recorded application, playback environment, storage conditions and other factors, it may not be possible to play the files normally.

Basic Operations

Control Panel



- 1 (HOME) Button Short press to return to the main interface.
- 2 Volume Adjusting Button.


Main System Interface



1 Radio/Music

Touch to enter the Radio/Music interface.



2 Car

Touch  to enter the Vehicle Settings interface.


3 HVAC

Touch to enter the AC interface.


4 Others

Touch   or swipe left or right at the bottom of the screen to view the following functions.


• Phone

Touch  to enter the Bluetooth Phone interface.


• Pictures

Touch  to enter the Pictures interface.


• Set up

Touch  to enter the Settings interface.


• Apple CarPlay *

Touch  to enter the Apple CarPlay interface.


• Android Auto *

Touch  to enter the Android Auto interface.

• Video

Touch  to enter the Video interface.

• Display Off

Touch  to turn off the display; touch again to wake up the display.

Power On/Off

Power On

If the vehicle power is turned off with the system currently in playback mode, the system will be automatically powered on when the vehicle power is turned on again.

If the vehicle power is turned off with the system in the standby state, short press the Power button on the system control panel to power-on the system after the vehicle power is turned on again.

With the system on, long press the HOME button on the system control panel to enter the Standby mode; keep pressing the button and the system will reboot automatically.

Power Off

Pressing the START/STOP Switch to the Off position will automatically switch off the Infotainment system.

Standby Mode

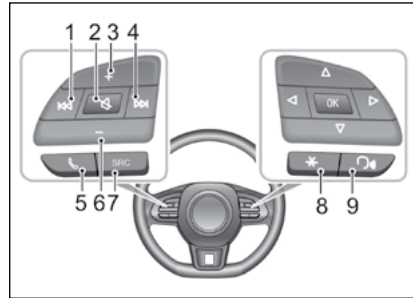
With the START/STOP Switch on, long press the HOME button to allow the Infotainment system to enter the Standby mode, the operation of the Infotainment system may be suspended.

In standby mode, all sounds will be muted. To cancel the Standby mode, short press the HOME button.

The following operations can also cancel the Standby mode:

- The system automatically switches to the parking image during parking.
- Turn off the START/STOP Switch, the system shuts down directly.

Control Buttons on Steering Wheel



1 ◀◀ Button

When playing audio, short press to return to the beginning of the track (except the Bluetooth music mode), short press again to switch to previous track, and long press to rewind (except the Bluetooth music mode). When playing video, short press to switch to previous video, and long press to rewind. When playing radio, short press to automatically search for the previous station; long press to manually search for the previous station.

2 🔇 Button

Mute/Unmute.

3 Volume Up Button

4 ▶▶ Button

When playing an audio/video, short press to switch to next audio/video (except the Bluetooth music mode), and long press to fast forward. When playing radio, short press to automatically search for the next station; long press to manually search for the next station.

5 📞 Button

Short press to hang up if in calling/talking state; short press to answer and long press to reject if in incoming call state.

6 Volume Down Button

7 SRC Audio Source Switch Button

Switch to the next available media audio source.

8 📶 Shortcut Button

📶 button on the steering wheel can be set as the shortcut key of SmartPhone / Home / Car.

9 Speech Recognition Function Button

Activate/Cancel speech recognition function. This button will only be used after Vehicle-Mobile Phone Interconnection * is enabled.

Volume Adjustment

The audio volume can be adjusted by the control panel and the buttons on the steering wheel. During the volume adjustment, the system automatically pops up a volume indication window which changes smoothly with the adjustment process.

Note: *The volume buttons on the steering wheel and control panel can only be used for the volume adjustment of audios of media and communication type.*

Note: *The playback volume of Bluetooth music can be adjusted by the device itself and the Infotainment player.*

Connecting/Disconnecting a USB Storage Device

Device

Inserting a USB Storage Device

Connect a USB device to the USB port for connection.

Removing a USB Storage Device

Check and confirm that there is no data being accessed, then pull out the USB storage device.

Note: *If data loss or damage to the storage device occurs for any reason, the data will generally never be recovered. For damages, costs or expenses due to data loss or damage, the manufacturer assumes no responsibility.*

Note: *Some USB storage devices may be unidentifiable.*

Note: *The Infotainment system may not achieve its optimum performance when using with some USB storage devices.*



Note: *Using USB hub or extension cable may not identify USB device.*

Bluetooth Phone

Instructions


- Connection to all mobile phones featuring Bluetooth wireless technology is not guaranteed.
- The mobile phone used must be compatible with the Infotainment system so that all functions of Bluetooth phone of the system can function correctly
- When using Bluetooth wireless technology, the Infotainment system may not operate all functions on the mobile phone.
- When transmitting voice and data via Bluetooth technology, the straight-line distance between the Infotainment system and the mobile phone should not exceed 10 metres. However, the actual transmission distance may be shorter than the estimated distance, depending on the usage environment.
- If Private mode is selected on the mobile phone, hands-free call function will be disabled.
- When the Infotainment system is turned off, the Bluetooth connection will be disconnected.
- Due to Bluetooth wireless connection, interruption or error occurring in the process of transmission in some extreme cases, and the Infotainment system may be unable to be paired and connected with the mobile phone. At this time, it is recommended to clear the paired devices in the device list on the mobile phone and the Infotainment system, and conduct pairing again.




Bluetooth Pairing and Connection

If Bluetooth is not enabled, no Bluetooth icon is displayed in the status bar; if Bluetooth is enabled but no device is connected,  is displayed in the status bar; if Bluetooth is enabled and any device is connected,  is displayed in the status bar.

The steps of Bluetooth pairing and connection are as follows:



- Touch [Bluetooth] in the Settings interface to enter the Bluetooth connection settings interface, and touch  on the Bluetooth bar to enable the Bluetooth function.

- The system displays the Bluetooth address and the device name.
- Enable the Bluetooth on the mobile phone and search for the Infotainment system for pairing. The mobile phone will receive a Bluetooth Pairing request, after the pairing is completed, a prompt message of Connection Completed will appear. If the pairing fails, please repeat the above steps.
- Touch  to connect to the mobile phone Bluetooth, and touch  to disconnect the Bluetooth. Touch  to remove the mobile phone from the list of paired devices.



Make/End a Call



You may make a call using the following methods:



- Keypad Input.
- Call the number in Contacts.
- Call the number in Call History.
- Make a call directly on the mobile phone.

You may end a call using the following methods:



- Touch  to hang up.
- Short press  on the steering wheel to hang up.
- Hang up on the mobile phone.

Incoming Call

Answer an Incoming Call

- Touch  to answer an incoming call.
- Short press  button on the steering wheel to answer an incoming call.
- Answer an incoming call on the mobile phone.

Reject an Incoming Call

- Touch  to reject an incoming call.
- Long press  button on the steering wheel to reject an incoming call.
- Reject an incoming call on the mobile phone.

Switch to Private Mode

During a call, touch  to enter the Private Mode (Speaker Mode by default).

During a call, touch  to restore the Speaker Mode.

During a call, touch  to switch between Microphone Mute or Enabled function.

In Private Mode, you may continue with the call using the mobile phone; the speakers and microphone of the Infotainment system will be muted. But Bluetooth is still connected.

Entertainment

Precautions for Playing a Storage Medium

Mode

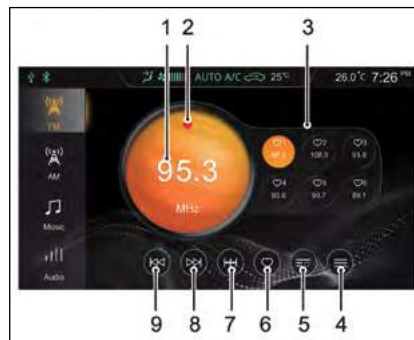
- The system supports USB drives and Bluetooth storage media.
- If the USB device media is not in use, DO NOT leave the device connected. This may result in connection deterioration.
- Do not remove USB device whilst media is playing. Failure to follow these instructions could result in corrupted data.
- Keep the USB port dry and free from debris. The port will become unusable if it is blocked.



Radio

Touch the Radio/Music area in the main interface, and touch [Radio] again to enter the Radio interface.

To listen to the broadcasting of different bands, touch [FM] or [AM] in the playback interface to switch radio bands. Pressing the SRC button can also switch between the different radio bands.

FM/AM



- 1 Current Station Name or Frequency
Touch [FM] or [AM] to switch the band.
- 2 Station Favorites State
 indicates that the station has been added to Favorites;  indicates that the station is not added to Favorites.
- 3 Display of Favorite Stations
- 4 Station List
- 5 List of Favorite Stations
- 6 Add a Station to/Remove a Station from Favorites

7 Station Preview

Automatically search for and preview each station and play each for 10 s. During the preview, click the button to terminate the preview function, and play the current previewing station.

8 Next Station

Short press to automatically search for the next station; long press to manually search for the next station.

9 Previous Station

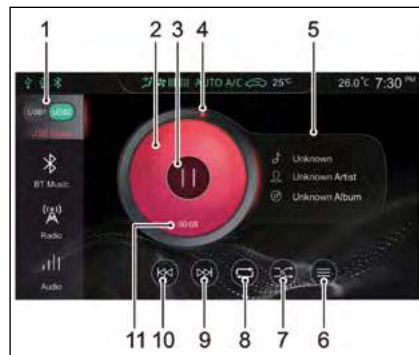
Short press to automatically search for the previous station; long press to manually search for the previous station.

Touch [Audio] in this interface, and the system skips to the Audio Settings interface.

USB Music

Insert a USB storage device into the USB port, and the system automatically loads the music from the storage device.

Touch the Radio/Music area in the main interface, and touch [USB Music] again to enter the USB Music Playback interface.



1 USB Drive

When there are two USB drives, you may choose to play music in USB1 or USB2.

2 Album Cover

3 Play/Pause

4 Track Playback Progress Bar

Track playback progress is displayed by the coil, drag the progress bar to skip to certain playing point.

5 Song/Artist/Album Name

6 USB Music List

Touch to enter the corresponding Folder List interface, then touch to select and play the track you prefer.

7 Random Playback Mode

You may switch between Random Playback and Folder Random Playback.

8 Loop Playback Mode

You may switch between Single Loop, Folder Loop and Loop All.

9 Next Track

Short press to switch to the next track; long press to fast forward.

10 Previous Track

Short press to switch to the previous track; short press during playing to return to the beginning of the track; long press to fast rewind.

11 Current Elapsed Time

Touch [Audio] in this interface, and the system skips to the Audio Settings interface.

Bluetooth Music

Please connect a Bluetooth device first before playing Bluetooth music. Refer to “Bluetooth Pairing and Connection” in “Bluetooth Phone” section for details.

After the Bluetooth device is connected with the system, touch the Radio/Music area in the main interface, and then touch [BT Music] to enter the Bluetooth Music playback interface.



- 1 Play/Pause
- 2 Song/Artist/Album Name
- 3 Next Track
- 4 Previous Track

Touch [Audio] in this interface, and the system skips to the Audio Settings interface.

USB Video

Insert a USB storage device into the USB port, and the system automatically loads the videos from the storage device.

Note: Due to differences in the compression ratio and bit rate of the multimedia formats downloaded from the Internet and other factors, the actual situation of the decoding result shall prevail.

Note: For your driving safety, when the vehicle speed reaches a certain value, the video safety mode will be activated automatically, the video cannot be played at that moment.

Note: The video cannot be played during a call.

Touch [Video] in the main interface to enter the Video Playback interface.

Note: When playing a video, touch the screen to wake up the menu bar mode, and touch it again to exit the menu bar mode.



- 1 Current Elapsed Time
- 2 Previous Video
Short press to switch to the previous video; long press to fast rewind.
- 3 Playback Progress Bar
Drag the progress bar to skip to certain playing point.
- 4 Play/Pause
- 5 Next Video
Short press to switch to the next video; long press to fast forward.
- 6 Video List
You may view and play the corresponding video file.

7 Total Video Duration

8 USB Drive

When there are two USB drives, you may choose to play videos in USB1 or USB2.

Pictures

Insert a USB storage device into the USB port, and the system automatically loads the pictures in the storage device.

Touch [Pictures] in the main interface to enter the picture Playback interface.

Touch a picture file to display it in full screen.

Note: Whilst viewing a picture file, touch the screen to wake up the menu bar mode, and touch it again to exit the menu bar mode.

Picture Browsing Interface



- 1 Slide Show
- 2 Zoom In
- 3 Zoom Out
- 4 Thumbnail
- 5 Pictures List

You may view and play the corresponding picture file.

6 USB Drive

When there are two USB drives, you may choose to view pictures in USB1 or USB2.

Note: The system supports the viewing of pictures stored on a USB device. Due to differences in picture resolution, format compression ratio and some other factors not all pictures may be decoded and displayed.

Note: Swipe to the left or right on the screen to switch to the next or previous picture.

Vehicle-Mobile Phone Interconnection *

Only applicable to models that feature Vehicle-Mobile Phone Interconnection.

Only the USB interface with can support vehicle-mobile phone interconnection.

Apple CarPlay *

Apple CarPlay enables information interaction between the mobile phone and the on-board Infotainment system, including map, music, telephone, short message, podcast, voice recognition .

Connection Method

- 1 Confirm that your mobile phone has the CarPlay function and that it is turned on.
- 2 Connect the mobile phone to the Infotainment system mainframe using a suitable USB cable.
- 3 In the main interface, touch [Apple CarPlay]* area to enter the Apple CarPlay interface.
- 4 After the vehicle and mobile phone are successfully connected, you can operate the iPhone using the Infotainment system screen.

- 5 Press the HOME button on the control panel to return to the main system interface.

Android Auto *

Android Auto enables information interaction between the android mobile phone and the on-board Infotainment system, including map, music, telephone, messages, voice commands.

Note: For the initial application, download and install Android Auto APP to your mobile phone from the market in which it will be operating.

When using, connect the mobile phone to the Infotainment system mainframe using a suitable USB cable. In the main interface, touch [Android Auto]* area to enter the Android Auto interface. Operate according to the interface prompt, then you can use the function once the connection is successful.

A/C

Touch the A/C area in the main interface to enter the A/C System Settings interface. Refer to “A/C Control Interface - Non Navigation *” in this Manual for details.

Vehicle Settings

Touch [Car] in the main interface to enter the Vehicle Settings interface. You can set up the lighting, HVAC, etc.

Note: After restoring factory settings, the vehicle settings of mainframe is reset to its original settings. Please use with caution.

Settings

Touch [Setup] in the main interface to enter the Settings interface. You can view the system information and set up the Audio, Time & Date, etc.

Note: In the system information interface, you can choose to restore the factory settings as required. After restoring factory settings, the mainframe is reset to its original settings and all data in the Infotainment system will be deleted. Please use with caution.

Seats & Restraints

Seats	70
Seat Belts.....	72
Airbag Supplementary Restraint System.....	79
Child Restraints	85

Seats

Overview

! *To avoid personal injuries due to the loss of control, DO NOT adjust the seats while the car is moving.*

The vehicle is equipped with 6-direction or 4-direction adjustable front seats and 60/40 split rear seats with foldable backrests.

An ideal position of the seat should make sure your driving position is comfortable, which allows you to hold the steering wheel with your arms and legs slightly bent and control all the equipment. Make sure your driving position is comfortable and enables you to maintain full control of the vehicle. Take care when adjusting the height of front seats - the feet of the rear passenger could become trapped when the seat is lowered.

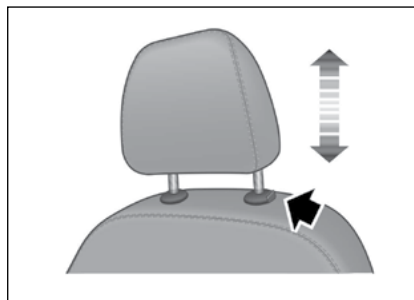
Do not incline the front-seat backrest excessively. Optimum benefit is obtained from the seat belt with the backrest angle set to approximately 25° from the upright (vertical). The driver and front passenger seats should be positioned as far rearward as practical. A properly adjusted seat helps reduce the risk of injury from sitting too close to an inflating airbag.

Head Restraints

! *Adjust the height of the head restraint so that the top of it is in line with the top of the occupant's head. This location may reduce the risk of head and neck injuries in the event of a collision. DO NOT adjust or remove the head restraints while the car is moving.*

! *DO NOT hang anything on any head restraint or head restraint rod.*

The head restraint is designed to prevent rearward movement of the head in the event of a collision or emergency braking, thereby reducing the risk of head and neck injuries.

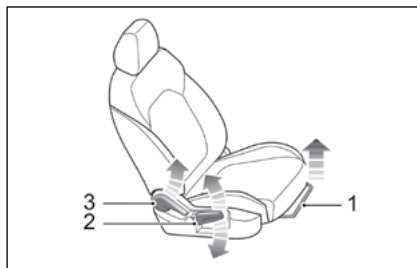


When adjusting a head restraint from low to high position, pull the head restraint directly upward, and gently press it downward after it reaches the desired position to make sure that it is locked in position. To remove the head restraint, press and hold the guide sleeve button (as indicated by the arrow) on the left of the head restraint, then pull the head restraint upward to remove it.

When adjusting a head restraint from high to low position, press the guide sleeve button (as indicated by the arrow) on the left of the head restraint, and press the head restraint downward; release the button after it reaches the desired position, and gently press the head restraint downward to make sure that it is locked in position.

Front Seats

Manual Seat



- **Forward/Backward Adjustment**

Lift the lever (1) under the seat cushion, slide the seat into an appropriate position and release the lever. Make sure that the seat is locked in place.

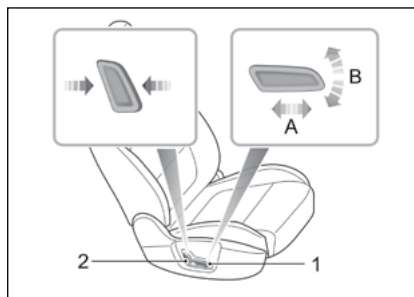
- **Cushion Height Adjustment ***

Lift the lever (2) repeatedly to raise the seat cushion, and press the lever downward to lower the seat cushion.

- **Backrest Adjustment**

Lift the lever (3), adjust the backrest until it moves into a satisfiable position, and put down the lever.

Power Seat *



- **Forward/Rearward Adjustment**

Push the switch (1) forward or backward (A) to move the seat forward/backward.

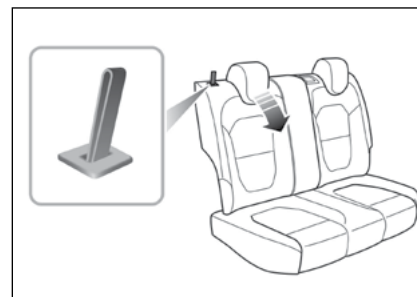
- **Cushion Height Adjustment**

Pull the switch (1) upward or push downward (B) to raise or lower the seat cushion.

- **Backrest Adjustment**

Move the switch (2) forward/backward to adjust the backrest until it reaches the desired angle.

Rear Seats



Folding Rear Seats

To increase luggage space, first fully lower (or remove) all the rear seat head restraints, and then pull up the backrest unlock straps on both sides respectively and fold the seat backrests forward.

Note: When the head restraint of the rear seat is not fully lowered or the backrest of the front seat is inclined backward excessively, the folding of the rear seat is very likely to damage the back of the front seat, small storage compartment or head restraint of the rear seat.

Unfolding and Locking Rear Seat Backrests

When returning the rear seat backrest to the upright position, pull up the backrest unlock straps to release the locked state, push the backrest until it reaches an appropriate position, and the backrest is locked when you hear a click.

Note: When returning the rear seat backrest to the desired position, make sure that the rear seat belt is not trapped.

Seat Belts



It is important that all seat belts are worn correctly. Always check that all passengers are wearing seat belts. DO NOT carry passengers that are unable to wear correctly positioned seat belts. Wearing seat belts incorrectly may cause serious injury or even death in the event of a collision.



Airbags can not replace seat belts. Airbags can only provide extra support when triggered, and not all traffic accidents will trigger airbags. Whether airbags are triggered or not, seat belts can reduce the risks of serious injury or death in accidents. Therefore, seat belts must be worn properly.



NEVER unfasten a seat belt whilst driving, serious injury or death may occur in the case of an accident or emergency braking.



NEVER fasten the driver seat belt or use a buckle replacement when the driver seat is vacant or when exiting the vehicle.



This vehicle is equipped with seat belt warning lamp to remind you to fasten your seat belt.

During driving, seat belts must be fastened, this is because:

- You can never predict if you will be involved in a collision accident and how serious it may be.
- In many cases of collision accidents, passengers with seat belts properly fastened are well-protected, while passengers with seat belts not fastened suffer from serious injury or even death.

Therefore, all passengers must wear seat belts correctly, even during short-distance journeys.

Protection Provided by Seat Belts

- !** *It is of equal importance for passengers in the rear seat to fasten their seat belts correctly. Otherwise, passengers with seat belts not correctly fastened will be thrown forward in accidents, and will endanger themselves as well as the driver and other passengers.*

When the vehicle is in motion, the travelling speed of the occupants is identical to that of the vehicle. In the event of a 'head on collision' or emergency braking, the vehicle may stop, but the occupants will carry on travelling until they come into contact with a stationary object. This object may be the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen or front seats.

A correctly fastened seat belt will eliminate this risk of injury. When the seat belt is worn correctly, it will lock automatically in collision accidents or emergency braking to reduce your speed together with the vehicle, so as to prevent the out-of-control movement which may cause serious injury to driver and passengers.



Wearing Seat Belts

- !** *Incorrectly worn seat belts could cause injury or death in the event of an accident.*
- !** *Seat belts are designed for one person, DO NOT share seat belts.*
- !** *DO NOT wrap a seat belt around when holding a baby or child in your arms.*
- !** *Remove any heavy coats or clothing when wearing a seat belt, failure to do so can affect protection provided by the seat belt.*

- !** *Seat belts should not be wrapped around hard or sharp objects such as pens, spectacles or keys.*

- !** *Seat belts cannot function correctly when the seats are reclined excessively. DO NOT drive when the seats are excessively reclined.*

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for use by normal sized adults. This part of the literature refers to adult use.

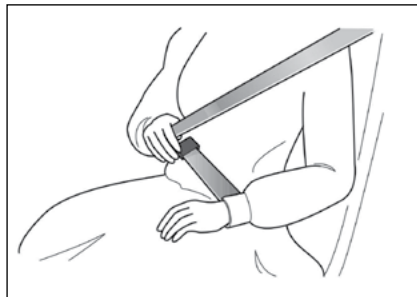
All seat belts are 3 point lap-diagonal belts.

In order to maintain effective protection, the passengers must sit in the correct orientation, feet placed on the floor in front of them, with an upright body (no excessive recline) and the seat belt correctly fastened.

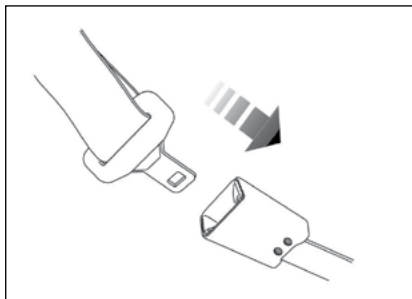
Fastening Seat Belts

Please follow the instructions below to fasten the seat belts correctly.

- 1 Adjust the seat correctly.
- 2 Hold the metal tab, pull the seat belt out steadily over the shoulder and across your chest. Ensure there is no twist on the belt.



- 3 Insert the metal tab into the buckle until you hear a 'click', this indicates the seat belt is securely locked.



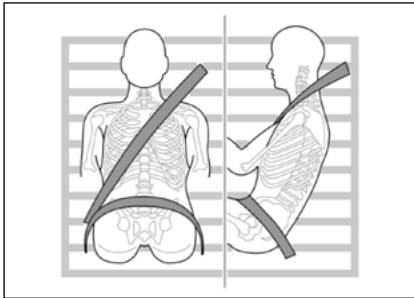
- 4 Remove any slackness in the belt by pulling up on the diagonal section of the belt.
- 5 To release the seat belt, press the red button on the buckle. The seat belt will retract automatically to its original place.

IMPORTANT

- Always ensure the seat belt will not become trapped in the door aperture when closing the door, damage will occur.
- Pulling the seat belt out too quickly may cause it to lock. In this case, allow the seat belt to retract slightly and then pull it across your body slowly.
- If it is difficult to pull the seat belt out, it may be due to twisted webbing. If this is the case, fully extract the seat belt, remove the twist, allow the seat belt to retract slowly.
- When using the rear seat belts please ensure they are fully retracted into the correct position to avoid jamming in the rear seat catches. It is a legal requirement to wear seat belts. Even if the seat belt is twisted it must be worn. Where possible avoid the twisted section contacting the body and seek advice from an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Correct Routing of the Seat Belts

! *Ensure the seat belt is correctly positioned on the body, never cross the neck or abdomen, never pass the seat belt behind the back or under the arms.*



When wearing seat belts, the lap belt section should be positioned as low as possible across your hips, never across the abdomen. In the event of a collision, the lap belt can apply a force on the hips and reduce the possibility of you slipping under the lap belt. If you slip under the lap belt, the belt will apply force on your abdomen, which may cause serious or fatal injuries. The diagonal section of the belt should cross the middle of the shoulder and

the chest. In the event of emergency braking or collision, the diagonal section of the belt will be locked.

To ensure that the seat belts always provide maximum protection, ensure the belt is flat, not loose and contacts the body.

Seat Belts Use during Pregnancy

Wearing correctly positioned seat belts will provide protection for both mother and unborn child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.



The diagonal section of the seat belt should pass across the chest as normal, the lap section of the belt should pass below the belly, low and snug on the hip bones. **NEVER** position the belt on or above the belly.

Please consult your physician for further details.

Seat Belts and Disabilities

It is a legal requirement that all occupants wear seat belts, this include people with disabilities.

Depending upon the disability, consult your physician for further details.

Children and Seat Belts

- ⚠ **Proper protection measures must be taken for children whilst travelling in the vehicle.**

For safety reasons, children must travel in suitable child restraint devices fixed to the rear seat.

Infants

- ⚠ **Only recommended child restraints suitable for the age, height and weight of the child should be used.**
- ⚠ **NEVER carry a child or infant with your arms during driving. When collision accidents occur, the weight of a child will produce such a great force that you can not hold the child. The child will be thrown forward and suffer serious injury or even death.**

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for adults, they are not suitable for children. In the event of an accident or collision the children are not secure, it could cause death or serious injury.

Infants **MUST** use a suitable child restraint device. Please consult the child seat

manufacturers guidelines when selecting the correct seat. Follow the manufacturers instructions on installation. Please refer to "Child Restraints" in this chapter for more details.

Older Children

- ⚠ **NEVER share a seat belt amongst children. In the event of an accident or collision the children are not secure, it could cause death or serious injury.**



As children grow and become older/larger, it will get to the stage when they no longer require child seat restraints, at this point they will require use of the vehicle standard seat belt. Please ensure the seat belt is correctly positioned on the body of the child.

Seat Belt Pre-tensioners

- ⚠ **The seat belt pre-tensioners will only be activated once and then **MUST BE REPLACED**. Failure to replace the pre-tensioners will reduce the efficiency of the vehicle's restraint system.**
- ⚠ **If the pre-tensioners have been activated, the seat belts will still function as restraints, and must be worn in the event that the vehicle remains in a drivable condition. The seat belt pre tensioners should be replaced at the earliest opportunity by an MG Authorised Repairer.**

The vehicle is fitted with seat belt pre-tensioners, these are designed to retract the seat belts and work in conjunction with the airbags in the event of a severe collision. They are designed to retract the seat belt and 'secure' the occupant in the seat.

The airbag warning light on the instrument pack will alert the driver to any malfunction of the seat belt pretensioners. (see 'Warning Lights and Indicators' in the 'Instruments and Controls' chapter).


The seat belt pre-tensioners can only be activated once, after activation they must be replaced. This may also involve replacement of other SRS components. Please refer to 'Replacing Airbag System Parts'.


IMPORTANT

- Seat belt pre-tensioners will not be activated by minor impacts.
- The removal or replacement of a pre-tensioner must be carried out by the manufacturer trained, dealer technicians.
- 10 years from the initial date of registration (or installation date of a replacement seat belt pre-tensioner), the seat belt pre-tensioners are suggested to be replaced by an MG Authorised Repairer.

Seat Belt Checks, Maintenance and Replacement

Seat Belt Checks


 ***Split, worn or frayed seat belts may not function correctly in the event of a collision, if there are any signs of damage, replace the belt immediately.***


 ***Always ensure the red release button on the seat belt buckle is pointing upwards to ensure easy release in the event of an emergency.***

Please follow the instructions below to regularly check whether the seat belt warning lamp, seat belt, metal tab, buckle, retractor and fixing device are working correctly:

- Insert the seat belt metal tab into the corresponding buckle and pull seat belt webbing close to the buckle quickly to check that the belt clasp locks.
- Hold the metal tab and pull the seat belt forward quickly to check that the seat belt reel locks automatically, preventing the webbing from extending.
- Fully extract the seat belt and visibly examine for twists, fraying, splits or worn areas.
- Fully extract the seat belt and allow to return slowly to ensure continual and complete smooth operation.
- Visibly examine the seat belt for missing or broken components.
- Ensure the seat belt warning system is fully functional. If the seat belt fails any of the above tests or inspections contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately for repairs.

Seat Belts Maintenance


 **DO NOT attempt to remove, install, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your MG Authorised Repairer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.**

 **Ensure no foreign or sharp objects become lodged in the seat belt mechanisms. DO NOT allow liquids to contaminate the seat belt buckle, this could affect the buckle engagement.**

Seat belts should only be cleaned with warm soapy water. Do not use any solvent to clean the seat belt. Do not attempt to bleach or dye the seat belt, it may weaken the seat belt. After cleaning, wipe with a cloth and allow to dry. Do not allow the seat belt to fully retract before it is completely dry. Keep seat belts clean and dry.

If there are contaminants accumulated in the retractor, the retraction of the seat belt will be slow. Please use a clean and dry cloth to remove any contaminants.

Replacing Seat Belts

 **Collision accidents may damage the seat belt system. The seat belt system may not be able to protect users after damage and may cause serious injury or even death when an accident occurs. After the accident, seat belts should be checked immediately and replaced as necessary.**

Seat belts should not require change after minor collisions, however, some other parts of the seat belt system may require attention. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer for advice.

Airbag Supplementary Restraint System

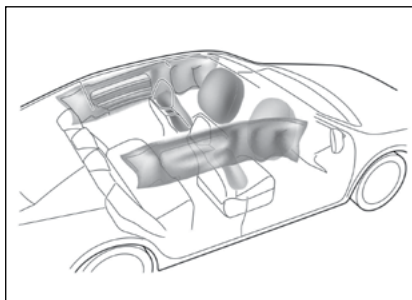
Overview

- !** *The airbag SRS provides **ADDITIONAL** protection in a severe frontal impact only. It does not replace the need, or requirement to wear a seat belt.*
- !** *The airbags together with the seat belts provide optimum protection for adults, but it is not the case for infants. The seat belt and airbag systems in the vehicle are not designed for protecting infants. The protection required by infants should be provided by child restraints.*

The Airbag Supplementary Restraint System generally consists of:

- Front Airbags (fitted to the centre of the steering wheel and dashboard above the glove compartment)
- Seat Side Airbags (fitted to the outer side of the seat squab)
- Side Head Impact Protection Airbags (fitted behind the headlining)

Please note that this is model and trim level dependant.




In the corresponding position where airbags are fitted, there is a warning sign stating 'AIRBAG'.


Airbag Warning Light




The airbag warning light is located in the instrument pack. If this lamp does not extinguish or illuminates during driving, it indicates that there is a failure in the SRS or seat belt. Please seek an MG Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity. An SRS or seat belt fault may mean the components may not be deployed in the event of an accident.


Airbag Deployment


 **Front seat passengers should not place feet, knees or any other part of the body in contact with, or in close proximity to a front airbag.**


 **To minimise the risk of accidental injury from inflating airbags, seat belts should be worn correctly at all times. In addition, both driver and front seat passenger should adjust their seat to provide sufficient distance from the front airbags. If side airbags/side head impact protection airbags are fitted, both driver and front seat passenger should be seated to maintain sufficient distance from the upper part of the body to the sides of the vehicle, this will ensure maximum protection when the side airbags/side head impact protection airbags are deployed.**


 **When airbags are deployed, children without proper protection may suffer from serious injury or even death. DO NOT carry children in the arms or on the knees during traveling. Children should wear seat**

belts suitable to age. DO NOT lean out of windows.

 **An inflating airbag can cause facial abrasions and other injuries if the occupant is too close to the airbag at the time of its deployment.**

 **DO NOT affix or place any objects on, or adjacent to the airbags. This may affect the airbag passage or create projectiles that may cause injury or serious harm in the event of airbag deployment.**

 **After deployment the airbag components become very hot. DO NOT touch any airbag related components, it may cause burns or serious injury.**

 **DO NOT knock or strike the position where airbags or related parts are located, so as to avoid accidental airbag deployment which may cause serious injury or even death.**

In the event of a collision, the airbag control unit monitors the rate of deceleration or acceleration induced by the collision, to determine whether the airbags should be

deployed. Airbag deployment is virtually instantaneous and occurs with considerable force, accompanied by a loud noise.


Provided the front seat occupants are correctly seated and with seat belts properly worn, the airbags will provide additional protection to the chest and facial areas in the event of the car receiving a severe frontal impact.


Side airbags and side head impact protection airbags are designed to offer additional protection to the side of the body facing the impact, if a severe side collision occurs.


IMPORTANT

- Airbags can not protect lower body parts of passengers.
- Airbags are not designed for rear collision, minor frontal or side impacts, or if the vehicle overturns; nor will it operate as a result of heavy braking.
- Deployment and retraction of the frontal and side airbags takes place very quickly and will not protect against the effects of secondary impacts that may occur.
- When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. This is not an indication of a malfunction, however, the powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from the eyes and any cuts or abrasions of the skin.
- After inflation, front and side airbags deflate immediately. This provides a gradual cushioning effect for the occupant and also ensures that the driver's forward vision is not obscured.

Front Airbags

 **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. Refer to 'Disabling the Passenger Airbag'.**


 **Front seat passengers should not place feet, knees or any other part of the body in contact with, or in close proximity to a front airbag.**

 **In extreme cases driving on very uneven surfaces may cause airbag deployment. Please take extra care when driving on uneven roads.**

Airbags are designed to deploy during serious impacts, the following conditions may cause airbag deployment.

- A frontal collision with unmovable or non deformable solid objects at a high speed.
- Conditions that can cause serious chassis damage, such as a collision with kerbstones, road edges, deep ravines or holes.

Seat Side Airbags *

 **The manufacture and material of the seat is critical to the correct operation of side airbags. Therefore, please DO NOT fit seat covers which may affect side airbag deployment.**

In the event of a serious side impact, the relevant side airbag will deploy (only the affected side).

- The airbag will be deployed in the event that the side of the vehicle is impacted with a solid object or another vehicle.

Side Head Impact Protection Airbags *

In the event of a serious side impact, the relevant side curtain airbag will deploy (only the affected side).

- The side curtain airbag will be deployed in the event that the side of the vehicle is impacted with a solid object or another vehicle.

Conditions in Which Airbags Will Not Deploy

The deployment of airbags does not depend on the vehicle speed, but on the object that the vehicle hits, angle of impact and the rate at which the car changes speed as a result of a collision. When the impact force of collision is absorbed or dispersed to vehicle body, airbags may not deploy; however, airbags may sometimes deploy according to impact condition. Therefore, the deployment of airbags shall not be judged based on the severity of vehicle damage.

Front Airbags

Under certain conditions the front airbags may not be deployed. Some examples are listed below:


- The impact point is not central to the front of the vehicle.
- The impact is not of sufficient force (the impact is with an object that is not solid, such as a lamp post or central barriers).
- The impact area is high (collision with the tailgate of a truck).
- Impacts to the rear or side of the vehicle.
- The vehicle rolling over.


Seat Side Airbags and Side Head Impact Protection Airbags *

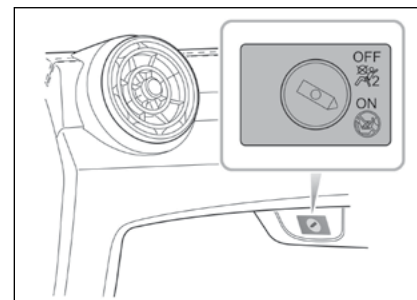
Under certain conditions the seat side and side head airbags may not be deployed. Some examples are listed below:

- Side impacts at certain angles.
- Light side impacts such as a motorcycle.
- Impacts that are not central to the side of the vehicle, either too far toward the engine compartment or the loadspace.
- The vehicle rolling over.
- The angled impact is not of sufficient force (the impact is with an object that is not solid, such as a lamp post or central barriers).
- The impact is not of sufficient force (with another vehicle, stationary or moving).
- The impact is from the rear of the vehicle.

Disabling the Passenger Airbag

 **The Passenger Airbag should only be disabled when a rear facing child seat is fitted to the front passenger seat.**

 **When an adult is seated in the front passenger seat, ensure that the airbag is switched on.**



The passenger airbag disable switch is located inside of the glovebox. To disable the passenger airbag, insert the key and turn the switch to OFF position.



The passenger airbag status light is located in the roof mounted interior lamp assembly. The shape of the lamp assembly varies according to the configuration of the vehicle.

When the switch is turned to the OFF position, the OFF indicator light (located in the PAB display panel in the lamp assembly) illuminates, this indicates that the passenger airbag is disabled.

When the switch is turned to the ON position, the ON indicator light (located in the PAB display panel in the lamp assembly) illuminates, this indicates that the passenger airbag is enabled.

Service and Replacement of Airbags

Service Information

- !** **DO NOT** install or modify the airbag. Any changes to the vehicle structure or airbag system wiring harness are strictly prohibited.
- !** Changes to vehicle structure is prohibited. This may affect the normal operation of the SRS.
- !** **DO NOT** allow these areas to be flooded with liquid and **DO NOT** use petrol, detergent, furniture cream or polishes.
- !** If water contaminates or enters the SRS it may cause damage and affect deployment. In this case contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

To prevent damage to the airbag SRS, the following areas should be cleaned sparingly with a damp cloth and upholstery cleaner ONLY:

- Steering wheel centre pad.
- Area of dashboard containing the passenger airbag.
- Area of roof lining and front pillar finishers which enclose the side head impact protection modules.

If the airbag warning lamp fails to illuminate, stays on, or if there is damage to the front or side of the vehicle, or the airbag covers show signs of damage, contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

IMPORTANT

- The removal or replacement of an airbag module should be carried out by an MG Authorised Repairer.
- After 10 years from the initial date of registration (or installation date of a replacement airbag), the airbag is suggested to be replaced by an MG Authorised Repairer. The appropriate page of the Service Portfolio must be signed and stamped once the work has been completed.

Replacing Airbag System Parts



Even if the airbag does not deploy, collisions may cause damage to SRS in the vehicle. Airbags may not function properly after damage, and can not protect you and other passengers when a second collision occurs, which may cause serious injury or even death. To ensure that SRS can function properly after collision, please go to an MG Authorised Repairer to check airbags and repair as necessary.

Airbags are designed for using once only. Once the airbag is deployed, you must replace SRS parts.

Please go to an MG Authorised Repairer for replacement.

Disposal of Airbags

When your vehicle is sold, ensure that the new owner knows the vehicle is equipped with airbags, and is aware of the replacement date of SRS.

If the vehicle is scrapped, the undeployed airbags may have potential risks, therefore, before the disposal, they must be deployed safely in a certain environment by a professional from an MG Authorised Repairer.

Child Restraints

Important Safety Instructions about Using Child Restraints

It is recommended that children below the age of 12 years old should be seated on the rear seat of the vehicle, in a child restraint system appropriate to the children's weight and size. Infants less than 2 years old should be restrained in an infant child restraint system.

It is recommended that a child restraint system that complies with UN ECE-R44 or ECE-R129 standard are fitted in this vehicle. Check markings on the child restraint system.

There are a number of child restraint systems available of different type and specification. For optimum protection, it is recommended that you choose restraint systems appropriate to the child's age and weight.

It is important to comply with installation instructions supplied by the child restraint manufacturer and that child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions may cause death or serious injury to the child in an event of a sudden stop or accident.

- All occupants, including children must wear seat belts or use an appropriate child restraint.
- It is recommended that children under 12 years of age or less than 1.5 metres tall should use the appropriate child restraint fitted to the rear seat.
- Only one child can be carried in any one restraint.
- Do not put the child on the lap or in arms when sitting in any seat.
- Always adjust the seat back rest to a central position and ensure it is locked in position when installing a child seat or restraint.
- If installing a rear facing child restraint to the rear seat, the corresponding front seat should be adjusted forward; if installing a forward facing child restraint to the rear seat, you may need to adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest; if installing a forward facing child restraint to the front seat, you may need to remove its headrest.
- Never let your child stand or kneel on the seat during driving.
- Always ensure the child is seated correctly in the child restraint.
- The ways of using seat belts have a great influence on the maximum protection offered by the seat belt, you must comply with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on proper use of seat belts. If seat belts are not properly fastened, a minor traffic accident may also lead to injury.
- Child restraints that are not fitted correctly may move and injure other occupants in the event of an accident or emergency braking. Therefore, even if there is no infant or child in the child restraint, it also should be fitted properly and securely in the vehicle.

Warnings and Instructions on Use of Child Restraint on Front Passenger Seat



! When the front passenger airbag is active, never install a rear facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, severe injury or even death can occur.

! In cases where there is a need to install a rear facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, use the key to deactivate the front passenger airbag function, or severe injury or even death can occur.

! Once the child restraint is removed from the front passenger seat, use the key to reactivate the front passenger airbag.

! When installing a child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the front passenger seat as far rearward as possible.

! Use one child restraint per child.

Please study the safety warning label on the sun visor. Where possible always install child restraints on the rear seat. If it is necessary to install a child restraint on the front seat please observe the warnings above.

Children's Safety and Side Airbags *

! Children should not be allowed in areas where airbags may be deployed, there is a risk of serious injury.

! Only recommended child restraints suitable for the age, height and weight of the child should be used.

! DO NOT place any items in areas where airbags may be deployed, there is a risk of serious injury.

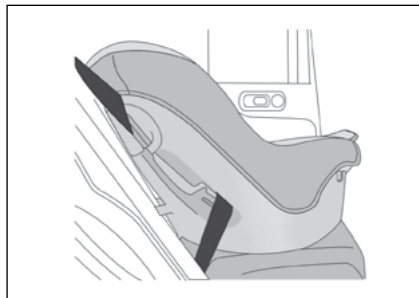
In the event of a side collision, the side airbags can provide better protection for the passenger. However, when the airbag is triggered a very strong expansion force is generated, if the passenger's seating position is not correct, the airbags or items in the side airbag deployment area may cause injury.

When the correct child restraint is used to secure the child properly in the rear seat and the child's seating position is correct, there is enough space between the child and the side airbag deployment region for the airbag to deploy without any hindrance, and thus provide the best protection.

Child Restraints Groups

Secured Using 3 Point lap Diagonal Belts

! Please **DO NOT** put the rear facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, this may cause serious injury or even death.



It is recommended that children should always be seated in the rear of the vehicle in a child restraint or restraint system, and fixed with 3 point, lap diagonal seat belts.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

! The ISOFIX anchorages in the rear seat are designed for use with ISOFIX systems only.

! Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Note: When installing and using any child restraint system, always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Note: The rear seats fitted to this vehicle are provided with the ISOFIX interface (as indicated by the arrow in the following image), these are designed to connect to an ISOFIX child seat.

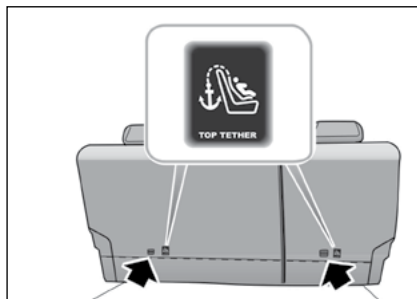
- 1 Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the mounting brackets.
- 2 When using ISOFIX mounting brackets for seat mounting, universally approved child restraint systems for ISOFIX may be used.



- 3 To fasten the top tether strap of the child restraint system, route the tether strap under the head restraint and attach to the anchorage hook being careful not to twist the strap. If not using ISOFIX lower anchorages, using the seatbelt, complete the installation in line with the child restraint manufacturers instructions.

Note: When using seat mounting, universally approved child restraint systems, Top-tether must be used.

- 4 After installation apply suitable force to ensure the restraint is securely fastened.



Approved Child Restraint Positions

It is recommended that a child restraint system that complies with UN ECE-R44 or ECE-R129 standard are fitted in this vehicle. Check markings on the child restraint system.

Approved Child Restraint Positions (for non ISOFIX Child Restraints)

Mass Group	Seating Positions			
	Front Passenger		Rear Outboard	Rear Middle
	With Front Passenger Airbag OFF Switch			
	Airbag ON	Airbag OFF		
0 group (less than 10 kg)	X	U	U	U
0+ group (less than 13 kg)	X	U	U	U
I group (9 ~ 18 kg)	X	U	U	U
II group (15 ~ 25 kg)	X	U	U	U
III group (22 ~ 36 kg)	X	U	U	U
Note: Description of letters in the table: U = Suitable for universal child restraint systems approved for this mass group; X = Seat position not suitable for child restraint systems in this mass group.				

Approved Child Restraint Positions (for ISOFIX Child Restraints)

Seating Position		Mass group categories					
		0 group	0+ group	I group		II group	III group
		Rear facing		Forward facing	Rear facing	Forward facing	Forward facing
		Up to 29 lbs(13 kg)		20–40 lbs(9 ~ 18 kg)		33–55 lbs(15–25 kg)	48–79 lbs (22–36 kg)
Front Passenger Seat	Size Class	Not ISOFIX equipped					
	Seat Type						
Rear Outboard Seat ISOFIX	Size Class	C,D,E ¹	A,B, B1 ¹	C,D ¹	—	—	
	Seat Type	IL ²	IL,IUF ³	IL	IL	IL	
Rear Centre Seat	Size Class	Not ISOFIX equipped					
	Seat Type						

Note: IL Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the semi-universal category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists;

IUF Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class;

¹. The ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child seat systems is defined by the capital letters grade A~

G. These identification letters are displayed on the ISOFIX child seat;

². At time of publishing the recommended Group 0+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Romer Baby Safe Plus;

³. At time of publishing the recommended Group I ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Romer Duo Plus.

Table of I- Size child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which I- Size child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R129.

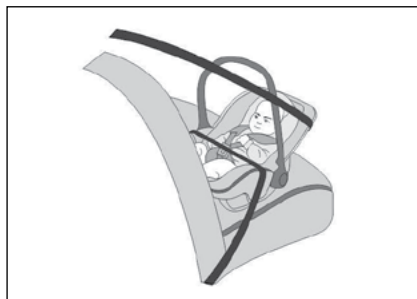
Type of child seat	Front passenger seat	Rear outboard seats	Rear centre seat
I- Size child restraint systems	X	I-U	X

Note: I-U Suitable for use with forward and rear facing I- Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with I- Size restraint systems.

Group 0/0+ Child Restraint

! When the front passenger airbag is active, never place a rear facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, severe injury or even death can occur.



Child restraints that can be adjusted to lying position are most suitable for infants who are lighter than 10 kg (normally for those younger than 9 months) or those who are lighter than 13 kg (normally for those younger than 24 months).

Group I Child Restraint

! When the front passenger airbag is active, never place a rear facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, severe injury or even death can occur.



Backward/forward child restraints are most suitable for infants whose weight is 9 ~ 18 kg (normally for those older than 9 months and younger than 4 years old).

Group II Child Restraint

! The diagonal section of the seat belt should pass across the shoulder and upper body, away from the neck. The lap section of the belt should pass across the hips, away from the abdomen.



The combination of child restraint and 3 point lap diagonal seat belt is most suitable for children whose weight is 15 ~ 25 kg (normally for those older than 3 years old and younger than 7 years old).

Group III Child Restraint

! *The diagonal section of the seat belt should pass across the shoulder and upper body, away from the neck. The lap section of the belt should pass across the hips, away from the abdomen.*



The combination of child booster seat and vehicle 3 point lap diagonal seat belt is most suitable for children whose weight is 22~36 kg and whose height is below 1.5 m (normally for those about 7 years old or those older than 7 years old).

Starting & Driving

Keys	96	Rear Driver Assistance System *	154
Child Proof Locks	99	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) *	158
Alarm System	99	Load Carrying	159
Starting and Stopping Engine	103		
Economical and Environmental Driving	108		
Catalytic Converter	110		
Fuel System	111		
Automatic Transmission *	113		
Manual Transmission *	118		
Continuously Variable Automatic Transmission *	119		
Brake System	124		
Stability Control System (SCS) and Traction Control System (TCS) *	132		
Cruise Control System *	133		
Adaptive Cruise Control System *	135		
Driving Assist System *	141		
Active Speed Limit (ASL) System *	150		
Parking Aid System	152		

Keys

Overview

! Keep the spare key in a safe place - not in the vehicle!

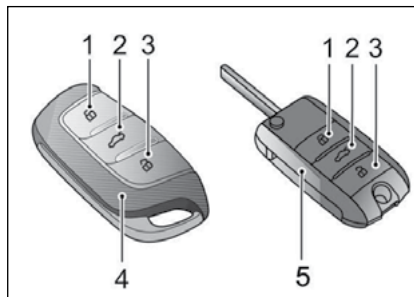
! It is recommended that spare keys are not kept on the same key ring, since this may cause interference and prevent correct key recognition and therefore prevent the engine from starting.

! The key contains delicate electronic components and must be protected from impact and water damage, high temperature and humidity, direct sunlight and the effects of solvents, waxes and abrasive cleaners.

Different key kits are provided according to vehicle configurations. One kit includes two smart keys; and the other kit includes two remote keys. They can open all locks.

The keys supplied to you have been programmed for the security system on your vehicle. Any key that is not programmed to your vehicle can not start the engine.

The key only works within a certain range. Its operating range is sometimes influenced by the key battery condition, physical and geographical factors. For safety consideration, after you lock your vehicle by the key, please recheck if the vehicle is locked.



- 1 Lock button
- 2 Tailgate release button
- 3 Unlock button
- 4 Smart key
- 5 Remote key

If your key is lost/stolen or broken, a replacement can be obtained from an MG Authorised Repairer. The lost/stolen key can be deactivated. If the lost key is found, an MG Authorised Repairer can reactivate it.

Note: Any key made independently outside of MG Authorised Repairer Network may not start the engine, and may affect the safety of your car. To obtain a suitable key replacement, it is recommended that you can consult MG Authorised Repairer.

Note: The new key cannot be offered to you immediately because it requires programming to the vehicle by the MG Authorised Repairer.

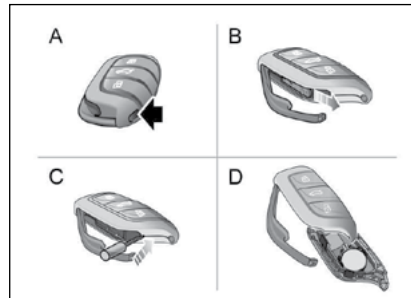
Note: When operating your vehicle with the smart key, avoid placing it near the devices with strong radio interference (such as notebook computers and other electronic products), the normal function of the key may be affected.

Replacing the Battery

Please use the picture guide to replace the key battery if any of the following conditions occur:

- The key locking/unlocking function range is reduced;
- The engine immobilisation warning lamp on the instrument pack flashes (Refer to “Warning Lights and Indicators” in “Instruments and Controls” section).

Smart Key *



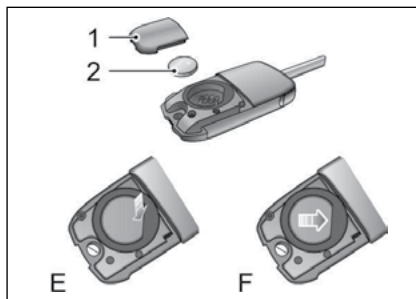
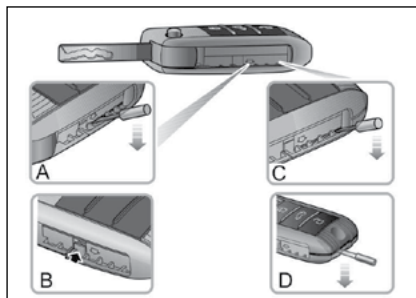
- 1 Press the button (A) on the smart key to eject the decorative trim.
- 2 Remove the backup mechanical key (B) in the arrowed direction.
- 3 Using a suitable flat bladed tool, insert the tool into the side of the key (C), carefully prise off the battery cover and separate the upper and lower casings (D).
- 4 Remove the battery from the slot.
- 5 Put the new battery in the slot, and make sure it is in full contact with the slot.

Note: Make sure that the polarity of battery is correct ('+' side facing down).

Note: It is recommended to use a CR2032 battery.

- 6 Refit the cover and press tightly, ensuring the gap around the cover is even.
- 7 Refit the mechanical key, and close the decorative trim.
- 8 Start the engine to resynchronise the key with the vehicle.

Remote key *



- 1 Unfold the remote key.
- 2 With a flat-bladed tool, insert it below the arrow mark at the side of the key (A), and pry up the battery cover carefully until the lock pins are separated (B).
- 3 Then insert the flat-bladed tool into the illustrated position (C), and apply pressure in the direction indicated by the arrow until the tail of the key makes a gap.
- 4 Continue to use the flat-bladed tool inserting it into the end of the key/battery cover (D), slightly pry the battery cover until the two bayonets at the end of battery cover are released.
- 5 Carefully prise off the battery cover (1).
- 6 Press the front part of button battery using slight force (E) to remove the battery (2).
- 7 Position the new battery, ensuring that correct polarity is maintained ("+" side facing up), slide it forward (F) ensuring it is fully inserted into the slot.

Note: Make sure the polarity is correct (positive side upward).

Note: It is recommended to use the CR2032 replacement battery.

- 8 Refit the cover and press tightly, check the gap around the cover is even.
- 9 Insert the remote key into ignition switch to resynchronise it.

IMPORTANT

- Use of an incorrect or inappropriate battery may damage the key. The new replacement's rated voltage, sizes and specifications must be the same as the old one.
- Incorrect fitting of the battery may damage the key.
- Disposal of the used battery must be strictly in accordance with relevant environmental protection acts.

Child Proof Locks

! **NEVER leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.**



Steps for enabling or disabling the child proof locks are as follows:

- Open the rear door at corresponding side, move the child proof lock lever to the lock position in the direction of the arrow to engage the child proof lock;
- Move the lever to the unlock position in the reverse direction of the arrow to disable the child proof lock.

With the child proof lock locked, the rear door at the corresponding side cannot be opened from inside the car, but can be opened from outside the car.

Alarm System

Your car is fitted with an anti-theft alarm and engine immobilisation system. To ensure maximum safety and operation convenience, we strongly recommend you to carefully read this chapter to fully understand the activation and deactivation of anti-theft systems.

Engine Immobilisation

Engine Immobilisation is designed to safeguard the vehicle from theft. Engine Immobilisation can only be deactivated to start the engine by using the matched key.

Engine Immobilisation (Key Start) *

When the matched key is inserted into the START/STOP Switch and the car is started, engine immobilisation is deactivated automatically. When the key is removed from the START/STOP Switch, the vehicle will automatically enable engine immobilisation. When the START/STOP Switch is in the ON position, if the engine immobiliser cannot identify the key inserted into the START/STOP Switch, the engine immobilisation warning lamp in the instrument pack illuminates. If the engine still can not be started by using the spare key, please contact an MG Authorised Repairer.

Engine Immobilisation (Keyless Start) *

Press the START/STOP Switch on the instrument panel, once a valid key is detected in the vehicle, the immobilisation system will be deactivated automatically.

If the message centre displays 'Smart Key Not Detected' or 'Put Key Into Back-up Position' or the anti-theft immobiliser system warning lamp illuminates, please put the smart key at the bottom of the centre console cup holder or storage compartment (refer to 'Alternative Starting Procedure' in 'Starting and Stopping Engine' section), or try to use the spare key. If the car can still not be started, please contact an MG Authorised Repairer.

Anti-theft System

Locking and Unlocking

When the vehicle is locked, the indicator lamps flash three times; when it is unlocked, the indicator lamps flash once.

Operation of Door Lock System (Key)

Key Locking

- Using the remote key to lock: press the lock button on the key to lock the car after closing the doors, bonnet and tailgate.
- Using the mechanical key to lock: partially operate the door release handle, using a suitable flat blade tool, insert the tool into the underside of the trim and carefully remove the door lock trim cover, insert the key into the driver door lock and turn counterclockwise to lock the car.

Key Unlocking

- Using the remote key to unlock: press the unlock button on the key to unlock the car.
- Using the mechanical key to unlock: partially operate the door release handle, using a suitable flat blade tool, insert the

tool into the underside of the trim and carefully remove the driver door lock trim cover, insert the key into the driver door lock and turn clockwise to unlock the car.

Note: *If the START/STOP Switch is not placed in ACC or ON/RUNNING position within 15 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked with the mechanical key, the engine immobilisation alarm will be triggered.*

Note: *If no panels are opened within 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked by using the remote key, all doors will automatically re-lock.*

Operation of Door Lock System (Keyless) *

The keyless entry system can lock and unlock the doors and tailgate as long as you carry the smart key and approach to the car.

IMPORTANT

The smart key must be within 1.5 metres of the vehicle for the keyless system to operate correctly.

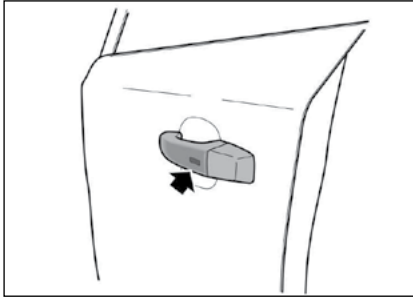
Keyless Locking

After switching the START/STOP Switch to OFF position and exiting the car, press the door handle button once before moving away from the car to lock all doors and tailgate (no need to press the lock button on the key). Note, this will also arm the alarm and immobilise the vehicle.

Keyless Unlocking

Press the button on the front door handle once to unlock the car, then pull the door handle to open the door.

Note: *When the vehicle is locked, if you are within the smart key range and operate the door handle button, but carry out no further action, after 30 seconds the vehicle will automatically re-lock itself to remain secure.*



IMPORTANT

After the door is locked by using the key, press the button on the door handle to unlock the car. If the car cannot be unlocked or locked normally, seek an MG Authorised Repairer.

Mislock

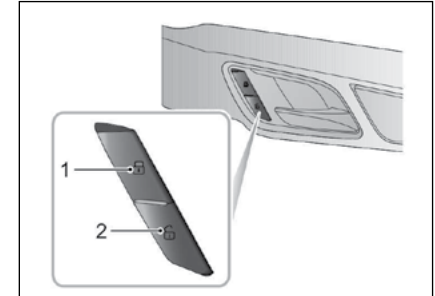
If the driver's door is not fully closed when the smart key lock button is pressed, or the START/STOP Switch has not been switched OFF, the vehicle horn will sound once, indicating a mislock. In this case, none of the doors will lock, the alarm system will not be armed.

If the driver's door is closed, the passenger door, bonnet and tailgate are not fully closed, the horn sounds once to indicate mislock when the car undergoes locking operation. However, the 'partial arming' attributes of the security system will enable as much of the system to be armed as possible (all fully closed doors, bonnet or tailgate apertures will be protected, but an open door will not!). The alarm indicator will flash. As soon as the open aperture is closed, the system will automatically revert to an armed state.

Anti-theft Alarm Sounder

If the anti-theft alarm has been triggered, the car horn will sound continuously. Press the UNLOCK button on the key, the anti-theft alarm will be deactivated.

Interior Lock and Unlock Switch



- 1 Lock Switch
- 2 Unlock Switch

When the anti-theft alarm system is not in operation, press the lock switch (1) to lock all doors; press the unlock switch (2) to unlock all doors.

Note: If the anti-theft alarm system is switched on, pressing the lock/unlock button will not lock/unlock the doors but will trigger the alarm system.

If the doors, bonnet and tailgate are closed, press the interior lock switch. The yellow indicator on the interior lock switch illuminates.

If a mislock is caused by non-driver door, tailgate or bonnet, press the interior lock switch. The yellow indicator on the interior lock switch illuminates.

Interior Door Handles

Use the interior door handle to open the door:

- 1 Pull the interior door handle once to unlock the door.
- 2 Pull the interior door handle again to open the door.

Speed Lock

All the doors will be locked automatically when the road speed exceeds 10 mph (15 km/h).

Automatic Unlock

When the START/STOP Switch is switched to the OFF position, all the doors will be unlocked automatically.

Tailgate

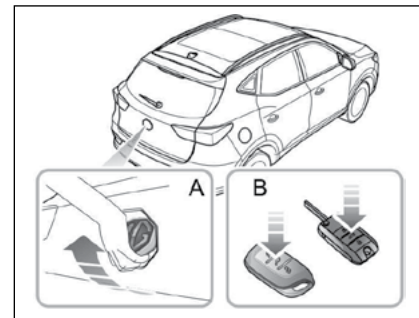


If the tailgate can not be closed due to the type of cargo loaded, be sure to close all windows during driving, select the face distribution mode of the air condition, and set the blower to maximum speed, so as to decrease exhaust fumes entering the vehicle.

Tailgate Open Mode

The tailgate can be opened by using the following 2 methods:

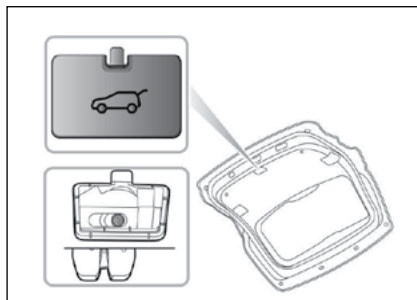
- With the START/STOP Switch in position OFF, long press the release button (B) on the key for more than 2 seconds to open the tailgate;
- Press the open switch on the tailgate (A):
 - For models with key entry, unlock the car firstly, then press the open switch on the tailgate (A) to open the tailgate;
 - For models with keyless entry, when the valid remote key is present in 1m range around the tailgate, press directly the open switch on the tailgate (A) to open the tailgate.



Emergency Tailgate Opening

The emergency tailgate release access is located in the centre of the tailgate trim.

Fold the rear seats, dig out the blanking cap with a hand, and insert a small flat-blade screwdriver into the emergency open locking slot to open the tailgate from inside, as shown in the figure.

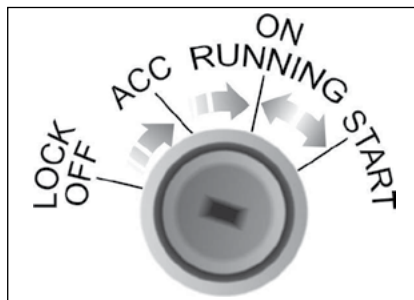


Starting and Stopping Engine

START/STOP Switch (Key Start)*

⚠ *When the vehicle is in motion, DO NOT switch off the ignition or remove the key, otherwise the steering wheel may be locked, making it impossible to turn the vehicle.*

⚠ *When the vehicle is in motion, DO NOT touch the key to avoid engine flameout!*



The START/STOP Switch is located on the right side of the steering column. Function of each position is as follows:

Position LOCK/OFF

- The key can be inserted or removed.
- After the engine is stopped and the key is removed, turn the steering wheel to one side to lock the steering wheel.

Position ACC

- The engine is not started and the key cannot be removed.
- Some individual electrical equipment and accessories can be operated, such as power windows.

Position ON/RUNNING

- All electrical equipment is operational.
- After the vehicle is started, the engine runs.

Position START

- Engine will run after starting.
- Release the key immediately after the engine is started, the START/STOP Switch will return to position ON/RUNNING automatically.
- When the engine is starting, some electrical equipment will be isolated during cranking.

Note: The key can only be turned from **ACC position** to **LOCK/OFF position** when the shift lever is in **P (parking) position**.

Note: When the **START/STOP Switch** is in the **OFF position**, if the driver side door is opened, an audible warning sounds to indicate that the key has not been removed.

Note: When the steering wheel is locked and the key cannot be turned from the **OFF position** to the **ACC position**, please turn the steering wheel slightly whilst turning the key to unlock the steering wheel.

START/STOP Switch (Keyless Start)*



The keyless **START/STOP Switch** is located in the fascia to the left of the steering column, it is a push button style switch.

Note: To operate the system, the remote key must be in the car. To remove the gear lever from the Park position, the **START/STOP Switch** must be in **ON/RUNNING** position, and the brake pedal must be depressed.

The operational status displays are as follows:

Indicator Off (OFF)

- The engine is shut off in this position.

Yellow Light (ACC)

- Some electrical equipment can be operated, such as power windows.
- Pressing the **START/STOP Switch** without the footbrake or clutch pedal being applied whilst the engine is **OFF** will place the system in the **ACC** state, this will illuminate the yellow indicator in the switch button.

Green Light (ON/RUNNING)

- All electrical equipment is operational.
- Drive and start the vehicle.
- Whilst in the **ACC** state, pressing the **START/STOP Switch** without the footbrake or clutch pedal being applied will place the system in the **ON** state, the green indicator will illuminate.

Note: After turning the START/STOP Switch to the OFF position and opening the door, if the key is still left in the vehicle, the audible warning will sound when closing the door, to remind you that the key is still in the vehicle.

If your car is subject to strong radio signals the keyless entry and start systems may suffer from interference and not function correctly. Please see the 'Alternative Starting Procedure'.

Starting the Engine(Key Start)*



Never start or leave the engine running in an unventilated building. Exhaust gases are poisonous and contain carbon monoxide, which can cause unconsciousness and may even be fatal.



Catalytic converters and particulate filters can be damaged if the wrong fuel is used, or if an engine misfire occurs. Before starting the engine, please read carefully the contents in the "Catalytic converter and Particulate Filter" section.

Operation of Starting the Engine

- 1 Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment (including the air conditioning);
- 2 Apply the parking brake (refer to "Brake System" of this section);
- 3 For auto transmission vehicles, ensure the shift lever is in P or N position;

Note: When the shift lever is in any other position, the engine cannot be started.

- 4 For manual transmission vehicle, ensure neutral is selected and the clutch pedal is fully pressed;

- 5 Insert the key, rotate it to position START and release the key immediately after the engine is started.

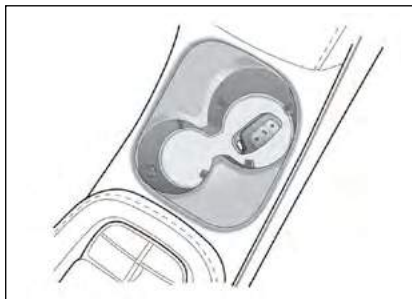
Note: After the engine starts, if the key is not released immediately, the starter will continue to work, which will not only discharge the battery, but also damage the starter and starter motor, catalytic converter and particulate filter.

Starting the Engine (Keyless Start)*

Starting the Engine:

- 1 Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment (including the air conditioning);
- 2 Apply the parking brake (refer to “Brake System” of this section);
- 3 For auto transmission vehicles, Ensure P or N is selected and press the brake pedal .
- 4 For manual transmission vehicles, ensure neutral is selected and the clutch pedal is fully pressed.
- 5 Press the START/STOP Switch (do not hold the button in, release immediately).

Alternative Starting Procedure (Auto Transmission)



If the car is located in an area where there are strong radio signals causing interference or the smart key battery condition is low, please use the following steps to attempt to start the car:

- 1 Place the smart key centrally in the centre console cup holder cubby box with the buttons facing upward - as shown in the illustration.
- 2 Ensure P or N is selected, press the brake pedal and then press START/STOP Switch to start the vehicle.

If the immobiliser cannot be released after the car has left the area of strong radio interference or had the smart key battery replaced please consult an MG Authorised Repairer.

Alternative Starting Procedure (Manual Transmission)



If the car is located in an area where there are strong radio signals causing interference or the smart key battery condition is low, please use the following steps to attempt to start the car:

- 1 Please place the smart key on the top of the standby start mark at the bottom of the small glove box of the center console facing upward - as shown in the illustration.
- 2 Press the clutch pedal and press START/STOP Switch to start the vehicle.

If the immobiliser cannot be released after the car has left the area of strong radio interference or had the smart key battery replaced please consult an MG Authorised Repairer.

Precautions for Starting the Engine

Idle speed will decrease after engine warm-up. Do not increase engine speed immediately after engine starts. Progressively operate the engine and transmission so that oil can preheat and lubricate all operating components.

DO NOT press the accelerator pedal while starting and DO NOT operate the starter for more than 15 seconds at a time.

In temperatures of -10°C and below, engine cranking times will increase. It is essential that all unnecessary electrical equipment is switched off while cranking.

IMPORTANT

- If the vehicle will not enter a ON/ RUNNING state, please check for any warning indicators or messages displayed in the instrument pack message centre. In extremely low temperatures please allow 5 minutes between starting attempts, if after 3 attempts the vehicle will not start please consult an MG Authorised Repairer or breakdown service.
- DO NOT leave the START/STOP Switch in the ACC, ON/RUNNING or START positions for any length of time when the engine is not running, otherwise it may lead to battery discharge due to the use of electrical equipments.
- The vehicle is fitted with engine immobilisation system. Any independently made key cannot start the engine.
- Your car is controlled by electronic control systems. When starting the engine, please make sure there are no electronic devices that can create electromagnetic interference near the vehicle. This may cause issues with the electronic control systems on the vehicle.

Stopping the Engine

Stop the engine as follows:

- 1 After bringing the car to a stop, continue to apply the footbrake until the parking brake is applied;
- 2 Apply parking brake;
- 3 For vehicles with automatic transmission, ensure that the shift lever is in P position.
- 4 For vehicles with manual transmission, ensure that the shift lever is in neutral position.
- 5 For vehicles with key start, turn the key from ON/RUNNING position to LOCK/OFF position, the engine will be shut down and the key can be removed.
- 6 For vehicles with keyless start, press START/STOP Switch to shut down the engine.

Note: After strenuous towing or driving at high speed (particularly in hot weather), it is suggested to allow the engine to idle for a few minutes before switching off, which enables the cooling system to work continuously to lower the engine temperature.

Economical and Environmental Driving

Running-in

The engine, transmission, brakes and tyres need time to 'bed-in' and adjust to the demands of everyday motoring. During the first 1500 km, please heed the following advice so as to enhance the long-term operation performance:

- Do not allow the engine to exceed 3000 rpm in any gear or the vehicle speed to exceed 120 km/h.
- Do not operate at full throttle or allow the engine to labour in any gear.
- Do not drive at a constant speed (either high speed or low speed).
- Avoid heavy braking where possible.

After 1500 km, engine speeds can be gradually increased.

Environment Protection

Your vehicle has been designed with the latest technology in order to minimize the environmental impact of exhaust emissions.

Economic Driving

The way in which you drive your car has a significant bearing on the life span of the car and battery.

Drive Smoothly

Anticipating obstructions and slowing down well in advance, avoids the need for unnecessary acceleration and harsh braking. A smooth driving style not only improves battery/distance performance, but can reduce the amount of wear on the brakes and tyres.

Avoid Driving at Maximum Speed

Fuel consumption and noise levels rise significantly at higher speeds.

Driving Foreseeingly


Avoid roads with traffic congestion or traffic jams. Foresee road congestion as early as possible and keep enough distance to the front car during driving, and slow down in time. Avoid stamping on the brake pedal for long time if there is no braking need, which will cause friction plate overheating and premature wear.

Use of Electrical Equipment

Use of electrical equipment will reduce the power available from the battery. Whilst it is essential to maintain a comfortable interior environment, excessive use of system such as A/C will increase power consumption and reduce the vehicle range.

Driving in Special Environment

Driving in Rain or Snow

 **Emergency braking, accelerating and steering on slippery roads will reduce the vehicle's handling performance and grip.**

- When raining the windows may fog, reducing visibility (Use the Air-conditioning demist function).
- Grip will be reduced, so please drive carefully.
- Reduce speed when it rains. Avoid aquaplaning (the effect of a film of water between the tyres and the road) affecting steering and braking performance.

Driving through Water

Avoid driving through floods after heavy rain, which may lead to serious damage to the vehicle.

Check and Service

Have the Vehicle Regularly Serviced

Regular servicing will ensure optimum fuel consumption and minimize exhaust pollutants, as well as effectively extending the service life of the car.

Check Tyre Pressures Regularly

Under-inflated tyres increase the rolling resistance of the car which, in turn, increases fuel consumption. Over or under-inflated tyres wear out more rapidly and also have a detrimental effect on the car's handling characteristics.

Do not Carry Unnecessary Loads

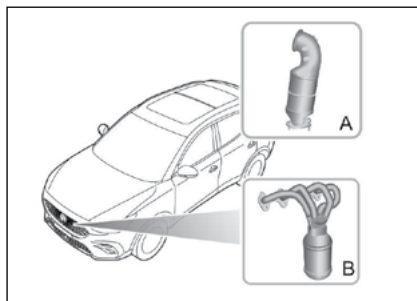
The additional weight of unnecessary loads wastes fuel, especially in stop/start conditions where the car is frequently required to set off from stationary.

Maintain Correct Four-Wheel Alignment

Maintain the correct wheel alignment. Avoid collisions with the kerb and reduce speed on uneven road surfaces. Out of specification wheel alignment will not only lead to excessive tyre wear, but also increases the load and fuel consumption.

Catalytic Converter

! **DO NOT** let the vehicle pass through or park on the road or ground with combustible materials such as hays or leaves etc which can come into contact with the exhaust system to avoid fires.



The exhaust system incorporates a catalytic converter, which converts poisonous exhaust emissions from the engine into environmentally less harmful gases. Depending on different models, the vehicles are equipped with different three-way catalytic converters: three-way catalytic converter for 1.3T models (A) and three-way catalytic converter for 1.5L models (B).

Improper use may lead to damage to the catalytic converter, so please pay special attention to the following requirements to minimize the possibility of damage.

Fuel

- Only use the recommended fuel.
- Never allow the vehicle to run out of fuel - this could cause a misfire which could damage the catalyst.

Starting

Pay attention to the followings when starting the engine:

- Do not continue to operate the starter after a few failed attempts; seek an MG Authorised Repairer.
- Do not start the engine by depressing the accelerator pedal repeatedly after the failed attempt.
- Do not attempt to start the vehicle by pushing or towing.

Driving

Pay attention to the followings when driving the vehicle:


- Do not overload or excessively revolve the engine.
- Do not allow the flameout when the vehicle is driving with a gear engaged. If the vehicle equipped with a manual transmission needs to slow down while traveling in high gear, downshift immediately to avoid insufficient driving force.
- If the vehicle consumes too much engine oil, please have the vehicle serviced immediately, as it will reduce the engine performance.
- If the engine shakes abnormally, or the vehicle lacks power while driving, please have it serviced at an MG Authorised Repairer.
- Do not drive on terrain likely to subject the underside of the vehicle to heavy impacts.

Note: *Unauthorised engine modification is prohibited. Because engine modification may result in engine misfire, loss of engine power or engine shaking, etc. which could seriously damage the catalytic converter.*

Note: *Regular maintenance must be carried out in accordance with the schedule specified in the 'Service Portfolio'.*

Fuel System


Fuel Requirements

 **Use only the recommended fuel which meets national standard! Serious damage to the catalytic converter, a reduction in engine power/torque and increase in fuel consumption will occur if the wrong fuel is used.**

Please use the fuel which is recommended and certified by the manufacturer. See 'Major Parameters of Engine' in 'Technical Data'.

If a lower grade of fuel is used, an engine knocking noise may occur, please use the recommended or above grade fuel as soon as possible. If the engine knocking noise is still noticeable after using the recommended or above grade fuel, please contact MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

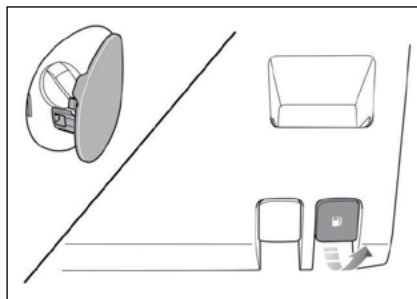
Safety Precautions in a Fuel Filling Station

 **Vehicle fuel gases are highly flammable and, in confined spaces, are also extremely explosive.**

Always take care when refueling:

- Switch off the engine.
- Do not smoke or use a naked flame.
- Do not use a mobile phone.
- Avoid spilling fuel.
- Do not overfill the tank.

Fuel Filler



Fuel Filler Flap

The fuel filler flap is located on the rear right-hand wing. Pull the fuel filler flap release handle under the driver side instrument pack to open the flap.

Fuel Filler Cap

Unscrew the filler cap anti-clockwise and allow any pressure inside the tank to escape, before removing the cap.

After refueling, tighten the filler cap clockwise until you hear 1 “click” sound.

Refueling

Do not fully fill the tank if the vehicle is to be parked in direct sunlight, or high ambient temperature - expansion of the fuel could cause spillage. The fuel filler tube is designed to accept a narrow, long filler nozzle. There is a cover at the filler neck, by inserting the filler nozzle thoroughly before fuel filling, the cover can be fully opened.

Start the engine after fuel filling. After refueling, if the engine runs unevenly, switch off and seek an MG Authorised Repairer before attempting to restart the engine.

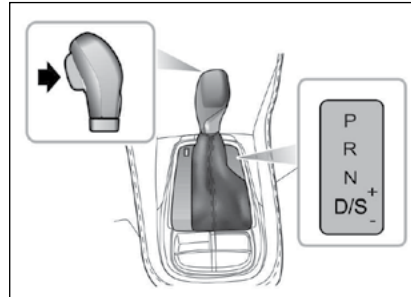
Automatic Transmission *

Instructions

The following information is very important, please read carefully before use.

- Before starting the engine, place the gear lever in P or N position, ensure the foot brake is pressed and the parking brake is applied.
- After the engine has started, ensure the foot brake and parking brake are applied, shift the lever to the required gear.
- Release the parking brake and hold the foot brake until you are ready to manoeuvre the vehicle. Once the foot brake is released, on flat road, the vehicle will automatically start off at a slow speed without application of the accelerator.
- Do not move the gear shift lever into P or R from D whilst driving, this will cause severe transmission damage or cause an accident.

Gear Shift



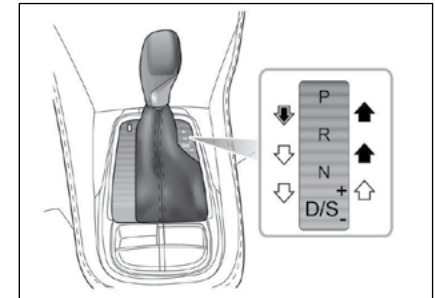
The automatic transmission is a 6 speed transmission.

Note: The highlighted letters or numbers in the information centre indicate the selected gear or mode.

A sprung loaded lock button, located in the gear lever, is used to prevent mistakenly selecting P (Park) or R (Reverse) whilst the gear selector is in other positions.

Shift Lever Operation


⚠ Unless necessary, it is not recommended to press lock button during gear shifting.




During the gear shift, operate the shift lever according to the instructions indicated by the following arrows:

- ⇨ Free gear shift.
- ➡ Press and hold the lock button to shift the gear.
- ➡➡ Press and hold the lock button and apply the brake pedal to shift gear.

Shift Lever Position

 **The shift lever must be placed in P position when parked.**

 **DO NOT move the gear shift lever into P or R from D whilst driving, this will cause severe transmission damage or cause an accident.**

- P Park

When the shift lever is in this position, the transmission will be mechanically locked. Use this gear only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied.

Note: When the vehicle is parking on a hill, press the brake pedal and apply the parking brake first and then select P gear.

- R Reverse

Select this gear only when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running at idle speed.

- N Neutral

Select this gear when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running at idle speed for a short time (for example, waiting for traffic lights).

- D Drive

This is used for normal driving and will allow automatic selection of 6 gears depending on vehicle speed and accelerator position.

- S Sport Mode

Select this mode when a more sporty acceleration performance is required.

- + Upshift

Whilst in Manual mode, upshift the transmission to the next available high gear.


- - Downshift

Whilst in Manual mode, downshift the transmission to the next available low gear.

Gearshift Speed


Selecting D will allow the transmission controller to carry out gearshifts taking in consideration of a number of factors including engine speed, vehicle speed and accelerator position. Light accelerator pedal application will result in a gear-change at low speeds, larger pedal applications will result in gear-changes at higher speeds.

Kick-down

 **The drive wheels may skid when kick-down is activated on road surfaces with low adhesion, this may lead to the vehicle sliding out of control.**

With D gear selected, pressing the accelerator pedal all the way down in one motion (also known as Kick-down) will provide better acceleration performance during overtaking. Under certain conditions, it will allow the transmission to shift to a lower gear immediately, and provide fast acceleration. Once the accelerator pedal is released, it will resume to a suitable normal high gear (based on the vehicle speed and the position of the accelerator pedal).

Driving on the Hill

 ***In cases where a short stop on a hill is required, such as a traffic jam, DO NOT momentarily apply the accelerator to prevent “roll back”. This could cause the transmission to overheat and result in damage.***


Hill Start

In cases of a hill start, where the vehicle has been stationary for some time, the foot brake has been released and the electronic parking brake applied, the starting assist function of the electronic parking brake (EPB) can be used to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards. With the seat belt safely fastened, press the foot brake, apply the electronic parking brake system, and select the desired gear (D/R/S), then release the foot brake; press the accelerator pedal to engage vehicle drive, the electronic parking brake system will automatically be deactivated.

Models fitted with Hill Hold Control can use this function to assist hill starts. For details on hill hold control system, please refer to “Foot Brake” of “Brake System” section.

Note: The assistance of these functions cannot defy the laws of physics. DO NOT drive the vehicle beyond its physical limitations, loss of control will still occur.

Downhill Driving

 ***Repeated application of the footbrake may result in the brakes becoming overheated. This will cause a reduction in braking performance and may even result in brake failure.***

If driving down a hill for long distances, it is advised to move the gear shift lever to the right and select the Manual mode. This allows manual gear selection. Use a lower gear selection to aid the slowing of the vehicle and thus avoiding over-use of the brakes. If a threshold is reached, the vehicle will automatically shift up, in these cases use of the brakes to slow the vehicle is necessary, at the same time re-select the lower gear.

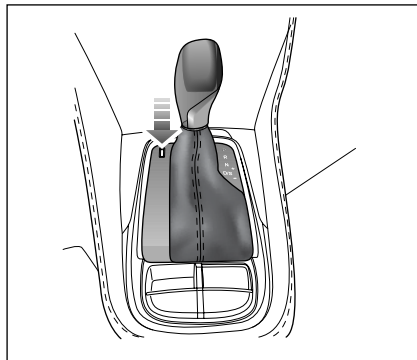
P Gear Emergency Release

When the START/STOP Switch is on and the brake pedal is pressed, if the shift lever cannot be moved out of P gear, turn off the START/STOP Switch, and apply the EPB. Insert the key or a proper tool into the hole on the

upper left corner of the gear shift panel, press the inner P gear emergency unlock button, move the shift lever to N gear simultaneously. Take out the key or the proper tool, start the engine and shift to the required gear.

DO NOT shift the lever back to P gear with the P gear emergency unlock button pressed, or the P gear emergency unlock mechanism may be damaged.

Note: If this occurs, please contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

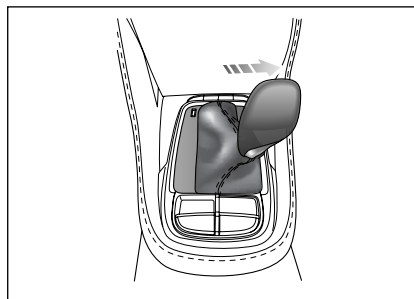


Control Mode

Economy Mode

Selecting D automatically places the vehicle in the Economy Mode. The information centre display will show “D”. Economy Mode provides optimum fuel consumption and emissions.

Sport Mode



Once D is selected, move the shift lever to the right to select S and enable the Sport Mode (the gear displayed in information centre changes to “S”). Under Sport Mode, the transmission upshifts later, so as to make full use of the power reserves of the engine .

When better acceleration is required, please select the Sport Mode, but please note that the fuel consumption will be increased when driving in Sport Mode.

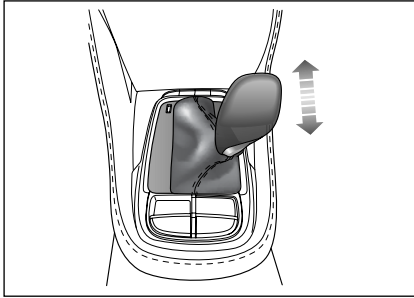
To exit Sport Mode, move the shift lever to the left back into D position.

Cruise Control Mode *

With the cruise control function enabled, the transmission will switch to the relevant gear for the vehicle speed automatically, thereby avoiding frequent gear shifts when the system needs to maintain a constant speed.

Manual Mode

With Sport Mode selected, move the shift lever toward “+” or “-”, this will enable Manual Mode. The gear displayed in the information centre will indicate current gear with a single number (1-6).



Move the shift lever toward “+” direction to upshift to next available high gear, move toward “-” direction to downshift to next available low gear.

With Manual Mode selected, if the driver makes an unreasonable gear selection, requests an upshift during low engine speeds, or requests a downshift during high engine speeds, the transmission will not respond and will remain in the current gear. If the vehicle is driven and the engine speed falls below a preset threshold in certain gears, the transmission will automatically shift down to the next gear to avoid engine stalling; when the vehicle accelerates, if the engine speed exceeds a preset limit, the transmission will automatically shift up to the next gear to

protect the engine.

To return to Sport Mode or any other modes, shift the lever across to the left and select D.

Automatic Transmission Failure

If the automatic transmission develops a problem, the engine emission malfunction indicator lamp in the instrument pack will illuminate or the message centre will display “EP”.

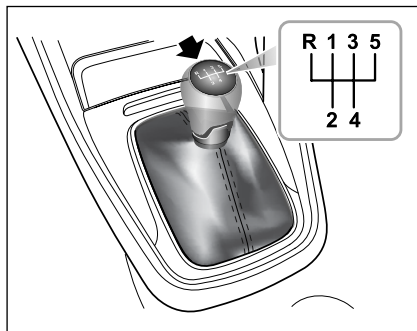
Some “failure modes” will cause the transmission to enter “Limp Mode”, during this time only certain gear positions can be selected and/or work, for example, R gear may not be selectable. If a serious functional failure occurs the vehicle cannot be driven, please consult an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Note: When the vehicle is in ‘Limp Mode’, manual gear selection functions are disabled and therefore not available.

Manual Transmission *

5-speed Manual Transmission

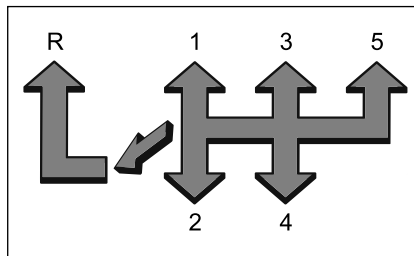
Shift lever



The manual transmission is a 5-speed transmission with 6 gears, which are: 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, R (Reverse) respectively.

Precautions while driving:

- 1 When selecting Reverse gear, you must ensure that the vehicle is completely in stationery, wait for a moment and then fully press the clutch pedal, from the N position, press the lever down and push it leftward, then push it forward into the R position, slowly release the clutch pedal to complete the gear shift.



Please wait for 2 ~ 3 seconds before shifting to R gear, otherwise the damage to the reverse gear may occur.

Please wait for 1 ~ 3 seconds before shifting to forward gear, otherwise the excessive wear to the synchronizer may occur.

- 2 Do not rest your hand on the shift lever while driving - pressure from your hand may cause premature wear to the gear shift mechanism.
- 3 Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal when driving - excessive wear to the clutch may occur.
- 4 Do not park the vehicle on a slope by engaging in a gear. This will result in excessive wear to the clutch.

Note: In order to guarantee the smooth driving and good fuel economy of the vehicle, please shift at an appropriate time, and never allow the tachometer pointer to remain in the red sector for prolonged periods, otherwise the engine may be damaged.

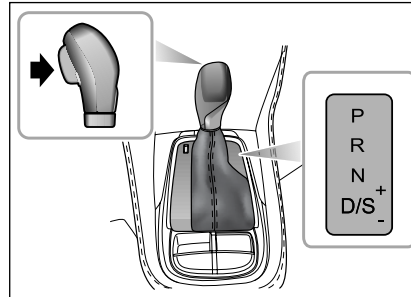
Continuously Variable Automatic Transmission *

Instructions

The following information is very important, please read carefully before use:

- Before starting the engine, ensure the shift lever is in P or N position, press the brake pedal and apply the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).
- After the engine has started, ensure the brake pedal is pressed and the EPB is applied, shift the lever to the required gear.
- Release the EPB and press the brake pedal until you are ready to manoeuvre the vehicle. Once the brake pedal is released on flat road, the vehicle will automatically start off at a slow speed without application of the accelerator.
- During driving, DO NOT coast in neutral, or it could damage the transmission or cause an accident.
- DO NOT tow with front wheels on the ground, or it could damage the transmission.

Gear Shift



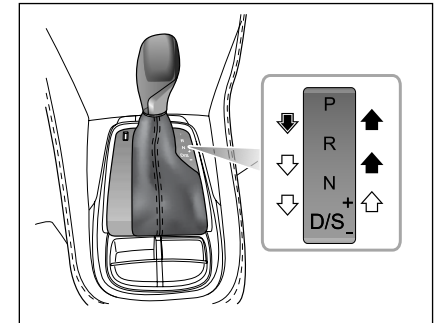
The automatic transmission is a continuously variable transmission .

Note: *The figure or letter in the message centre shows the selected gear.*

A lock button with spring located in the gear lever, is used to prevent mistakenly selecting P (Park) or R (Reverse) whilst the gear lever is in other positions.

Shift Lever Operation


⚠ Unless necessary, it is not recommended to press lock button during gear shift.




During the gear shift, operate the shift lever according to the instructions indicated by the following arrows:

- ⇨ Free gear shift.
- ➡ Press and hold the lock button to shift gear.
- ➡ Press and hold the lock button and press the brake pedal to shift gear.

Shift Lever Position

 **The shift lever must be placed in P position when parking.**

 **During driving, do not switch the shift lever between D and R or switch to P position, otherwise the severe damage to automatic transmission or dangerous accident may occur.**

- **P Park**

When the shift lever is in this gear, the transmission will be locked. Use this gear only when the vehicle is stationary and the EPB is applied.

Note: When the vehicle is parking on a hill, press the brake pedal and apply the EPB first and then select P.

- **R Reverse**

Select this gear only when the vehicle is stationary.

- **N Neutral**

Select this gear when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running at idle speed for a short time (for example, waiting for traffic lights).

- **D Drive**

This is used for normal driving and will allow automatic selection of Drive gear depending on vehicle speed and accelerator pedal position.

- **S Sport**

Select this mode when better acceleration performance is required.

- **+ Upshift**

Under manual mode, upshift the transmission to the next available high gear.


- **- Downshift**

Under manual mode, downshift the transmission to the next available low gear.

Gearshift Speed

With D or S gear selected, the speed at one gear varies depending on the accelerator pedal position: a smaller throttle opening will result in the gear shift at a lower speed, and a larger throttle opening will render the transmission to delay the gear shift action, until the gear shift is completed when the vehicle reaches a higher speed.

Kick-down

 **The drive wheels may skid when kick-down is activated on road surfaces with low adhesion, this may lead to the vehicle sliding out of control.**

With D or S gear selected, pressing the accelerator pedal all the way down in one motion (also known as kick-down) will provide better acceleration performance during overtaking. Under certain conditions, it will allow the transmission to shift to a lower gear immediately, and provide fast acceleration. Once the accelerator pedal is released, it will resume a suitable higher gear (based on the vehicle speed and the position of the accelerator pedal).

Driving on Hills

! *In cases where a short stop on a hill is required, such as a traffic jam, DO NOT momentarily apply the accelerator to prevent “roll back”. This could cause the automatic transmission to overheat and result in damage.*

Hill Start

In case of hill start, the starting aid function of the EPB can be used to prevent from slipping. With the seat belt safely fastened, press the brake pedal, apply the EPB, and engage into the desired gear (D/R/S), then release the brake pedal; press the accelerator pedal for start-off, the EPB will automatically deactivated for starting aid.

You can also use the hill hold control function to hill start. For details on hill hold control system, please refer to “Brake System” in this chapter.

Note: *The aid of these functions cannot defy the laws of physics. DO NOT drive the vehicle beyond its physical limitations, loss of control will still occur.*

Downhill Driving

! *Repeatedly pressing the brake pedal may result in brake overheating, thereby causing the degradation of brake performance or brake failure.*

If driving down a hill for long distances, slow down first, and then push the shift lever from D gear to the right and enter into manual mode, then manually engage in low gear. Use a lower gear selection to aid the slowing of the vehicle and thus avoiding over-use of the brakes. For example, when driving down the hill with continuous curves, engage into 2 gear; when driving down the straight hill, engage into 3 gear. If the brake force of engine is insufficient, the speed is increased, the automatic transmission will shift to high gear automatically to avoid the overrunning of the engine, at this time, you need to press the brake pedal immediately and shift to appropriate low gear through manual mode.

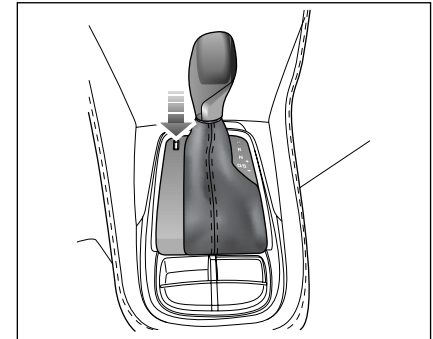
P Gear Emergency Release

When the START/STOP Switch is on and the brake pedal is pressed, if the shift lever cannot be moved out of P gear, turn off the START/STOP Switch, and apply the EPB.

Insert the key or a proper tool into the hole on the upper left corner of the gear shift panel, press the inner P gear emergency unlock button, move the shift lever to N gear simultaneously. Take out the key or the proper tool, start the engine and shift to the required gear.

DO NOT shift the lever back to P gear with the P gear emergency unlock button pressed, or the P gear emergency unlock mechanism may be damaged.

Note: *If this occurs, please contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.*

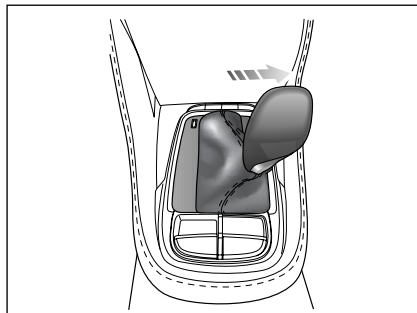


Control Modes

Standard Mode

With the shift lever in D position, the automatic transmission enters into standard mode by default automatically, and the message centre will display “D” gear. The standard mode is used for daily driving.

Sport Mode



With the D position selected, move the shift lever rightwards to S gear to enable the sport mode (“S” is presented on the message centre). In sport mode, the transmission upshifts some time later, so as to make full use of the power reservation of the engine.

When better acceleration is required, select sport mode, but please note that the fuel consumption will be increased when driving in sport mode.

To cancel sport mode, move the shift lever leftwards to D gear.

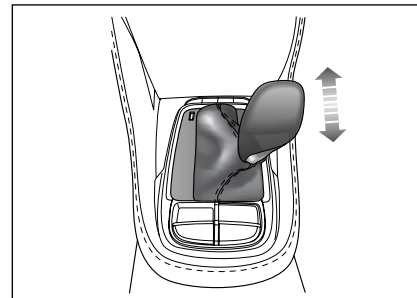
Cruise Control Mode *

With the cruise control function enabled, the transmission will switch to the relevant gear for the vehicle speed automatically, thereby avoiding frequent gear shifts when the system needs to maintain a constant speed.

Manual Mode

With sport mode selected, move the shift lever towards “+” or “-” direction, this will enable the manual mode. The gear displayed in the message centre will indicate the current gear with a single number (1~8).

Note: In manual mode, the transmission has 8 simulated gears.



Toggle the shift lever towards “+” direction to upshift to next available high gear; or toggle the shift lever towards “-” direction to downshift to next available low gear.

In manual mode, if the driver makes an unreasonable gear selection, such as requests an upshift during low engine speeds, or requests a downshift during high engine speeds, the transmission will not respond and will remain in the current gear. If the vehicle is driven and the engine speed falls below a preset threshold in certain gears, the transmission will automatically shift down to the next gear to avoid engine stalling; when the vehicle accelerates, if the engine speed increases continuously and exceeds the allowable maximum speed but

no upshift request received, the transmission will automatically shift up to the next gear to protect the engine.

To return to other modes, move the shift lever leftwards and select D.

Transmission Failure

When the transmission has some faults, the engine emission malfunction indicator lamp in the instrument pack illuminates. When some faults occur, the transmission will enter Limp Mode and the vehicle will only function in some gears; while in individual cases it may fail to reverse. If some severe functional malfunctions occur, the vehicle will be inoperative.

Note: If this happens, seek an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Note: In Limp Mode, the manual mode is disabled.

Brake System

Foot Brake

The free stroke of brake pedal is in the range of 0–30mm.

For added safety, the hydraulic braking system operates through dual circuits. If one circuit should fail, the other will continue to function, but greater pedal pressure will be needed, and increased brake pedal travel, and longer stopping distances will be experienced. In the event of a brake failure where only one circuit is operational, the car should be brought to a halt as soon as traffic conditions safely allow. **DO NOT** continue driving - seek an MG Authorised Repairer.

Servo Assistance

The braking system is servo assisted, always be aware of the followings during the operation:

- The servo assistance functions with the engine started up only. Never allow the car to freewheel with the engine turned off.
- Always take particular care when being towed with four wheels on the ground and the engine turned off. If the engine

should stop for any reason while driving, bring the car to a halt as quickly as traffic conditions safely allow, and do not pump the brake pedal as the braking system will lose any remaining servo assistance.

- Once the engine has stopped it will lose any remaining servo assistance, use suitable force to apply the brake pedal to stop the car safely in the current traffic conditions. Contact an MG Authorised Repairer.
- Efficiency of the brake servo booster can be affected by numerous conditions, such as engine speed loss. These conditions could result in extra force required to operate the brake pedal to stop the car.

Wet Conditions

Driving through water or heavy rain may adversely affect braking efficiency. In this case, keep a safe distance from other vehicles and intermittently apply the brake pedal to keep the brake disc surface dry.

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD)

Your car is equipped with EBD, which, in order to maintain braking efficiency, distributes braking forces between front and rear wheels, under all load conditions.

EBD integrates a monitoring system. The monitoring system is linked to the brake system malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument pack. Refer to “Warning Lights and Indicators” in “Instruments and Controls” section.

If the indicator lamp illuminates while driving, or remains illuminated after the START/STOP Switch is turned on (ON/RUNNING position) and the parking brake is released, it indicates there is a failure with the braking system, and the EBD may be inoperative. In such a case, stop the car immediately and contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible. **DO NOT** drive the car with the brake system malfunction warning light illuminated.

Electronic Brake Assistance (EBA) *

Your car is equipped with EBA, which reacts to the speed at which the brake pedal is applied. If, in an emergency situation the brakes are applied faster than the limits set within the system, then full ABS application is applied to bring the car to a stop in the shortest possible distance.

Hill Hold Control (HHC) *

HHC has limitations when subject to adverse conditions such as wet or icy surfaces and steep slopes. The driver must always maintain control of the vehicle and attention should not be reduced just because HHC is enabled.



HHC is not a substitute for parking brake application when carrying out a hill start. This system is only suitable for use as a start assist during driving.



DO NOT exit the vehicle with only HHC applied, otherwise it may lead to a serious accident when HHC releases.



In order to prevent the vehicle from accidentally rolling backward during hill start under a stop-and-go road condition, please step on the brake pedal deeply for several seconds before start.

The HHC helps the driver to start when going uphill, and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.

The following conditions must be fulfilled to activate the HHC:

- The driver's door is closed and the driver seat belt is fastened.
- The car sits steadily on an uphill slope.
- SCS is active and fault free.
- The parking brake is fault-free and released.
- The clutch pedal is depressed (MT), or is in forward gear or reverse gear (AT).
- The engine starts.
- A sufficient brake pedal application force has been applied.

If the driver releases the brake pedal on an uphill slope, the HHC will keep the vehicle still for a few seconds. If the vehicle is failed started, the brake pedal will automatically release and the vehicle may roll backward, at this time, the brake pedal shall be depressed immediately.

Note: The HHC is available in both forward and backward directions when pulling away on uphill slopes.

Auto Hold *

! When auto hold stops the vehicle for reasons such as flameout, releasing the seat belt or pressing the auto hold switch, the electronic parking brake is applied. It cannot be guaranteed that the vehicle will be stabilised in all cases. For example, the rear wheels are on a slippery road surface, or the vehicle incline is too great (larger than 20%). Please make sure that the vehicle is safely stabilised prior to exiting.

! DO NOT take any extra risks when driving due to the fact the vehicle is fitted with additional convenience functions. The driver should pay full attention and observe the surroundings even if the vehicle is equipped with Auto Hold system.

! The auto hold function cannot guarantee the stability of the vehicle when starting off or braking on hills especially on slippery or icy surfaces.

! DO NOT leave the vehicle when the engine is running and the auto hold is active.

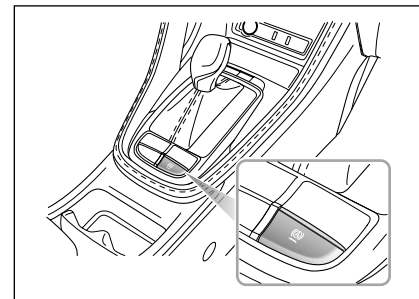
! Auto hold cannot guarantee the electronic parking brake operation in all cases after flameout. Please ensure the electronic parking brake is applied and the vehicle is stabilised prior to exiting the vehicle.

! The auto hold function should be switched off during the use of a car washer for automatic car washing, otherwise the electronic parking brake may suddenly apply and cause vehicle damage.

With the engine running, if the vehicle is required to stop for long periods or frequently for long periods (such as wait at the traffic lights, stop on a slope or stop and go with traffic), the auto hold function can assist the driver in stabilising the vehicle, enabling you to remove your foot from the brake pedal when the vehicle is stationary and the Auto Hold active.

Auto hold has 3 main states:

- 1 Off: The function in Off state.
- 2 Standby: The function is in Standby state, when the function is activated but the vehicle is not parked, and the indicator light of auto hold switch is on. Once the vehicle has stopped, and all other conditions are met, the system will automatically select Park.
- 3 Parking: The function in Parked state. In this state the green lamp (P) in the instrument pack illuminates.



With the driver's seat belt fastened, the door closed and the engine running, press the auto hold switch to switch the auto hold function from Off to Standby state.

With the brake pedal firmly pressed and the vehicle completely stopped, the auto hold function will switch from the Standby state to the Parking state.


When the auto hold is in the Parking state, engaging D or R and pressing the accelerator will automatically release the auto hold function.


In some circumstances such as releasing the seat belt, flameout or remaining static for a length of time, it will result in the vehicle exiting the auto hold Parking state and applying the electronic parking brake.


Note: With the brake pedal pressed, operating the switch to turn the auto hold off, the system will NOT apply the parking brake.

Note: It is recommended to turn off the auto hold function when reversing into the parking space.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) *

 **The HDC system is only an auxiliary function. It has limitations when subject to adverse conditions such as wet or icy surfaces and steep slopes. The HDC system cannot overcome the laws of physics, always ensure that the vehicle is driven down steep slopes at low speeds.**

 **Even when the HDC system is switched on, the driver must always pay close attention to the driving state of the vehicle, and take active control when necessary. In certain cases, HDC may be suspended or switched off temporarily.**

 **During some driving conditions on downhill surfaces (e.g. driving down a slope at high speed or small slope, etc.), HDC is inoperative, the driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times and use brake applications to ensure safety.**

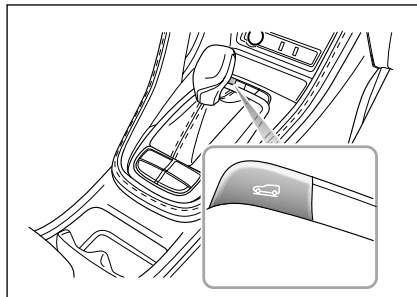
The HDC system is an auxiliary function specially designed for driving on acute downhill gradients. The system reduces the speed by applying brake force, thus assisting the driver to drive on acute downhill surfaces with low speeds.

Please DO NOT use this function when driving on the ordinary roads.

When the HDC is working, the brake system may generate strong vibrations or noise. It is normal during the operation of HDC.

Note: During the operation of the hill descent control (HDC) system, please do not move the shift control knob to the "N" position. Such operation may deactivate the HDC function.

HDC System On/Off



When the START/STOP Switch is switched ON/RUNNING, HDC system defaults to off. Use the switch to turn the HDC system on/off.

Normally, HDC system has four states:

- 1 Standby: Press the HDC switch (ON) to set the system into standby mode, the green HDC warning lamp in the instrument pack will illuminate.
- 2 Operation: Whilst in Standby mode, when the vehicle is driven down an acute gradient, if the accelerator and brake pedals are not pressed and the vehicle is at low speed, the HDC system will automatically enter the operating state.

In this case, the HDC warning lamp in the instrument pack flashes green, and may be accompanied by the working noise of the brake system. The HDC system will attempt to control the vehicle drive down the steep slope smoothly.

- 3 Temporary Deactivation: Press the accelerator or brake pedal beyond a preset limit whilst in operating mode and the HDC system will temporarily suspend operation.
- 4 Off: Press the HDC switch (OFF) to switch the system OFF, the green HDC warning lamp in the instrument pack will extinguish.

Note: When the vehicle turns at a fast speed whilst on an incline, the HDC system may switch from Standby to Operating mode.

Note: During HDC system operation the braking system will automatically pressurise and maintain pressure. Operation of the brake pedal during this phase may result in a 'kickback' sensation through the pedal. This is normal for HDC operation.

HDC ON/Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Refer to "Warning Lights and Indicators" in "Instruments and Controls" chapter.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

! ABS cannot overcome the physical limitations of stopping the car in too short a distance, cornering at too high a speed, or the danger of aquaplaning, i.e. where a layer of water prevents adequate contact between the tyres and the road surface.

The purpose of the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is to prevent the wheels from locking while braking, thereby enabling the driver to retain steering control of the car.

The fact that a car is fitted with ABS must never tempt the driver into taking risks that could affect his/her safety or that of other road users. In all cases, it remains the driver's responsibility to drive within normal safety margins, having due consideration for prevailing weather and traffic conditions.

Under normal braking conditions, ABS will not be activated. However, once the braking force exceeds the available adhesion between the tires and the road surface, thereby causing the wheels to lock, ABS will automatically come into operation. This will be recognisable by a rapid pulsation felt through the brake pedal.

Braking in an Emergency

! DO NOT pump the brake pedal at any time; this will interrupt the operation of ABS and may increase the braking distance.

If an emergency situation occurs, the driver should apply full braking effort even when the road surface is slippery. ABS will ensure that the wheels do not lock and that the car is brought to a halt in the shortest possible distance for the prevailing road surface conditions.

Note: On soft surfaces such as powdery snow, sand or gravel, the braking distance produced by the ABS system may be greater than that for a non-ABS system, even improved steering would be experienced. This is because the natural action of locked wheels on soft surfaces is to build up a wedge of material in front of (or to the side of, if steering) the tyre contact patch. This effect assists the car to stop when braking or to change direction when steering.

No matter how hard you brake, you are still able to continue steering the vehicle as normal.

IMPORTANT

ABS can not reliably make up for the driver's mis-operation or lack of experience.

ABS Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Refer to "Warning Lights and Indicators" in "Instruments and Controls" section.

Note: The normal (non-ABS) braking system remains fully operational and is not affected by partial or full loss of ABS. However, the braking distances may increase.

Active Rollover Protection (ARP) *

! *The ARP system cannot overcome the laws of physics. It is a driver aid to assist the stability of the vehicle and under extreme conditions. It is not a guarantee that the car will not roll over.*

In case that the vehicle with high centre of mass due to dynamic driving (such as change lane) or stable driving (such as loop driving) may roll over, ARP brakes the outside wheels to under-steer, thereby preventing the vehicle from rollover.

Note: *During ARP application the steering characteristics of the vehicle may be noticeably different from normal.*

Emergency Braking Hazard Warning Lights Control System (HAZ)

If the vehicle is traveling at high speed and the driver makes an emergency braking manoeuvre, the system will automatically flash the brake lamps to warn the following drivers, thereby effectively reducing the risk of rear-end collision accidents.

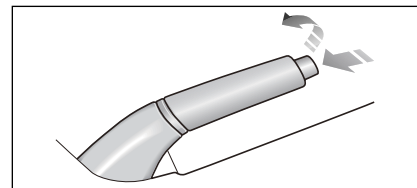
Note: *If the hazard warning lights are being operated manually, the HAZ function will be disabled.*

After the HAZ function is activated, when the emergency braking manoeuvre is exited (no severe deceleration detected) then the function will be switched off after a few seconds.

Note: *If the vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h when the brake lamp flashes out, the hazard warning lights will illuminate automatically. The hazard warning lights can be turned off by short pressing the hazard warning light switch or speeding up the vehicle to above 20 km/h for more than 5 seconds.*

Parking Brake *

! *Never drive the vehicle without releasing the parking brake or pull up the parking brake while the vehicle is moving. Doing this may cause the vehicle to lose control, the ABS will not work and may damage the rear wheel brakes.*



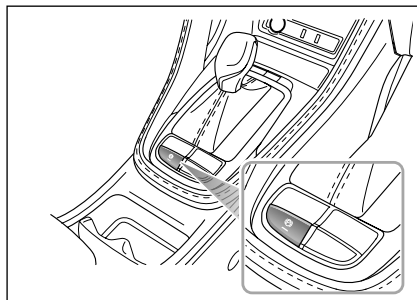
The parking brake only acts on rear wheels. Pull up the parking brake lever, and the parking brake will act. When you stop the vehicle, make sure that the parking brake lever is always pulled up.

To release the parking brake, pull up the parking brake lever slightly, and then press the button at the front end of the lever (as shown by the arrow in the figure) to fully lower the parking brake lever.

When parking on steep slopes, don't just rely on the parking brake to brake.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) *

! *In the event of EPB malfunction where EPB release is not possible, please consult an MG Authorised Repairer in order to carry out an emergency manual release of the parking brake.*

**Applying the EPB**

While the vehicle is stationary, the EPB can be applied. Ensure the EPB is applied every time the vehicle is left or parked.

- Pull the EPB switch upward until the indicator in the EPB switch illuminates.

- If the indicator in the EPB switch and the indicator (P) in the instrument pack illuminates, the EPB is applied.
- If the EPB malfunction indicator lamp (P) in the instrument pack remains on, it indicates that a fault has been detected. Please contact an MG Authorised Repairer immediately.

Note: An audible motor noise may be heard when applying or releasing the EPB.

IMPORTANT

- In the event of a flat battery or power failure, it is not possible to apply or release the EPB. In such a case, 'jump leads' shall be used for emergency engine start, please refer to "Emergency Starting" in "Emergency Information" chapter.

Releasing the EPB

- Place the START/STOP Switch in the ON/RUNNING position, depress the brake pedal, and press the EPB switch.
- If the indicator in the EPB switch and the indicator (P) in the instrument pack are extinguished, the EPB is released.

Starting Aid

The EPB can predict the driver's intention and automatically release the EPB.

If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the engine is started up, D or R gear is selected and the accelerator pedal is depressed for start off, the EPB will automatically release.

Emergency Braking Function

! *Inappropriate use of the EPB can lead to accidents and injuries. Do not apply the EPB for vehicle braking, unless in emergency.*

! *During emergency braking using the EPB, DO NOT switch off the ignition, this could result in serious injury.*

When the car is in motion, in case of any emergency, such as the car can not be stopped by the brake pedal, it can be decelerated by pulling up and holding EPB switch.

- Pull the EPB switch upward and hold to realize the emergency braking. Continuous acoustic alarm will sound simultaneously during emergency brake.
- To cancel the emergency braking process, release the EPB switch.

Stability Control System (SCS) and Traction Control System (TCS) *

Stability Control System (SCS)

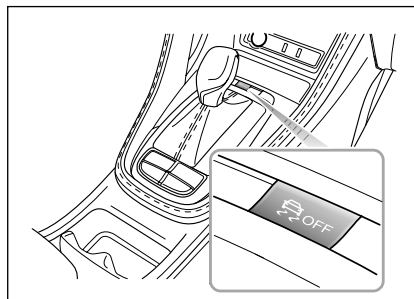
SCS is designed to assist the driver in control of driving direction. The SCS is automatically activated after the engine is started.

When SCS detects that the vehicle is not moving in the intended direction, it will intervene by applying brake force to selected wheels or through the engine management system to prevent sliding and assist in bringing the car back to the right direction.

Traction Control System (TCS)

The purpose of TCS is to aid traction and driving stability, thereby helping the driver to maintain control of the car. The TCS monitors the driving speed of each wheel individually. If spin is detected on one wheel, the system automatically brakes that wheel, transferring torque to the opposite, non-spinning wheel. If both wheels are spinning, the system will reduce the output torque of the power system in order to regulate wheel rotation until traction is regained.

Switching On/Off



With the START/STOP Switch is switched ON/RUNNING, SCS and TCS will automatically turn on. And you can turn them off after the engine is started.

- Press SCS switch (less than 2 seconds) to turn off TCS.
- Press SCS switch (longer than 2 seconds) to turn off SCS and TCS.

Note: Press the SCS switch (more than 10 seconds), it will be regarded as misoperation.

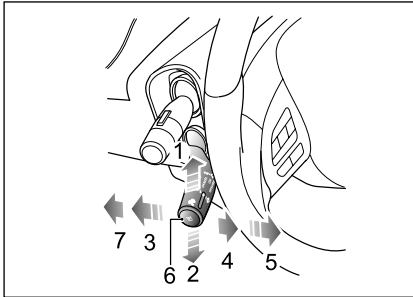
- To recover the operation of SCS and TCS, press SCS switch once again.

Note: Disabling SCS and TCS will not affect the operation of ABS. Always disable TCS when driving with snow chains fitted.

Stability Control/Traction Control Warning Lamps

Refer to “Warning Lights and Indicators” in “Instruments and Controls” section.

Cruise Control System *





- Acceleration (1)
- Deceleration (2)
- Cruise Cancel (3)
- Cruise Standby (4)
- Cruise Resume (5)
- Cruise Set (6)
- ASL Standby (7)

Cruise control enables the driver to maintain a constant road speed without using the accelerator pedal. This is particularly useful for motorway cruising, or for any journey where a constant speed can be maintained for a lengthy period.

Cruise Control System Activation

Cruise control system is operated with a lever located, at the left side of the steering wheel underneath the lighting stalk switch.

With the START/STOP Switch in position ON/RUNNING, if the lever switch is in the 'ASL Standby' position (7 in figure), then the cruise control is OFF. To set the cruise control to 'Standby' pull the lever switch to 'Cruise Standby' (4 in figure), the yellow indicator lamp  in the instrument pack will illuminate indicating the system is in 'Cruise Standby' mode.

With the system in 'Standby' when the current vehicle speed is above 40km/h (the gear of vehicle with manual transmission should be at 3 or above), press the 'Cruise Set' button (6 in figure). The indicator  in the instrument pack will change to green and the cruise control will enter and activated state. The operating range is 40 - 200 km/h.

The target speed of the cruise system will be set at the current speed, and the cruise system will take effect. At this time, the cruise control system will maintain the set speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.

Note: The set speed held in the cruise control memory will be cancelled when either the cruise control lever is switched to "ASL Standby" position (figure 7) or the START/STOP Switch turned off.

Target Cruise Speed Adjustment

When the cruise control is active, the 'target speed' can be increased or decreased:

Push the lever switch upwards (1 in figure), this will increase the speed.

Push the lever switch downwards (2 in figure), this will decrease the speed.

Release the lever switch when the desired speed is reached.

Push the lever switch upwards or downwards briefly to increase/decrease the vehicle target speed in increments of 1 km/h, then the vehicle will accelerate/decelerate to the new target speed.

Pressing the accelerator at any time will override the cruise control and allow acceleration to undertake manoeuvres such as overtaking. Releasing the accelerator will return the vehicle to the set target speed.

Pause/Stand By

Cruise control will be disengaged and set to 'Standby' if:

- Lever switch moved to 'Cruise Cancel' position (3 in figure).
- Brake pedal pressed.
- Auto gear lever moved to P, R or N.
- Manual gear-change made.
- Clutch pedal pressed.
- Conditions initiate SCS intervention.
- An incline causes excessive decline in speed.

Resume

If the cruise control remains on after the disengagement, moving the lever switch to 'Cruise Resume' (5 in figure) will reinstate the target speed to the setting prior to disengagement.

Note:

- **Never use the cruise control system in the reverse gear.**
 - **DO NOT use the cruise control in unsuitable conditions, such as on slippery surfaces, excessively heavy rain or in traffic conditions that DO NOT suit maintenance of constant speeds.**
 - **When not in use, ensure the lever switch is in the 'ASL Standby' position (7 in figure).**
 - **When the automatic transmission is in "Sport" mode, it is not recommended to use the cruise control system.**
 - **During the operation of cruise control system, the actual speed may deviate from the target cruise speed to some extent due to road conditions (such as uphill, downhill, etc).**
 - **If the actual speed is excessively lower than the target speed or SCS is activated due to the hill or road surfaces, the cruise control system may automatically revert to standby mode.**
- **DO NOT operate the switch for excessively long periods, or press multiple switches simultaneously, this may cause the system to fail. If this situation occurs, when it is safe to do so, cycle the ignition.**

Adaptive Cruise Control System *

! *The adaptive cruise control system is designed as a comfort system enabling the driver to maintain a constant speed or distance from the car in front. It provides assistance to the driver, it DOES NOT replace any of the drivers responsibilities. When using the adaptive cruise control system, it is important that the driver maintains concentration at ALL times and is prepared to take action. Otherwise, accidents or personal injuries may occur.*

The adaptive cruise control system can automatically switch between constant speed cruise and car following cruise depending on whether it can detect a vehicle directly ahead. Constant speed cruise controls the vehicle at a certain speed range. Car following cruise operates by setting the distance between the vehicle and the vehicles directly ahead.

When activated if the adaptive cruise control system detects a vehicle in the same lane directly ahead it may accelerate or gently apply braking of the vehicle to maintain the set following distance.

Note: The adaptive cruise control system is designed for highways and roads in good condition. It is recommended not to be used on urban roads and mountain roads.

Adaptive Cruise Control System Activation

! *After following the vehicle ahead to a stop, the driver must observe any local traffic laws and ensure that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants, such as pedestrians, directly in front of the vehicle before allowing it to pull away and begin to follow the vehicle ahead again.*

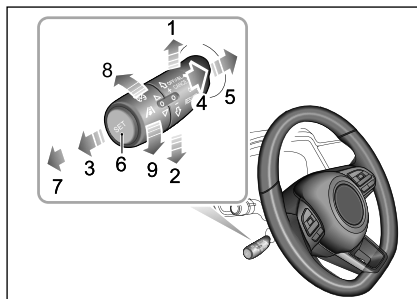
! *Whilst using the car following cruise function it is strongly recommended that the driver does not touch the accelerator pedal. Any activation of the accelerator will not allow the system to automatically apply the brakes should this be necessary.*

! *DO NOT exit the vehicle when the adaptive cruise control system car following cruise function has stopped the car, or is keeping the car stationary. Before exiting the*

car the shift control knob should be in the Park position and the START/STOP Switch in the OFF position.

! *If the adaptive cruise control system has already stopped the vehicle, and the adaptive cruise control function is disabled, turned off or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer stay still, it may move forward or slip backward. When the vehicle is stopped and kept still by the adaptive cruise control system, be sure to be ready to apply the brakes manually.*

! *When driving on a bend, the adaptive cruise control may actively reduce the vehicle speed to maintain vehicle stability and safety.*



- 1 Speed Limit Increase/Accelerate
- 2 Speed Limit Decrease/Decelerate
- 3 Cancel
- 4 Standby
- 5 Resume
- 6 Set
- 7 OFF
- 8 Increase Distance
- 9 Decrease Distance

The adaptive cruise control system is operated with a lever switch, which is located under the left side of the steering wheel.

- 1 With the vehicle START/STOP Switch in the ON/RUNNING position, if the adaptive cruise lever switch is in the 'OFF' position (7), then the adaptive cruise control system is switched OFF.
- 2 Move the adaptive cruise lever switch to the 'ON' position (4), the adaptive cruise system status indicator on the instrument pack illuminates yellow, the adaptive cruise control system is in the Standby mode.
- 3 The system will automatically detect the speed and position of the vehicle ahead, if your vehicle speed is above 5 km/h, after pressing the 'Set' button (6) at the end of the adaptive cruise stalk lever, the indicator on the instrument pack will turn green, and the adaptive cruise control system enters the Activated mode, its target speed is the actual speed at activation; if your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, then the target speed of the system is set at 30 km/h. If the speed of the vehicle ahead is greater than the cruise target speed of your vehicle, your

vehicle will maintain the target speed to conduct constant speed cruise. If the speed of the vehicle ahead is lower than the cruise target speed of your vehicle, it will enter the car-following cruise. An image of your car and the car ahead is displayed in the instrument pack message centre. In this mode the actual speed may be less than the set target speed. Whilst in the car following cruise mode, you can follow the vehicle ahead to a stop. If the parking time is less than a preset time period, your vehicle may automatically pull away to follow the vehicle ahead, or you need re-activate the adaptive cruise control system using the method displayed.

Note: Manual deactivation of either the Traction Control System (TCS) or Stability Control System (SCS) will inhibit the operation of the adaptive cruise control system.

Adaptive Cruise Target Speed Adjustment

When the adaptive cruise control system is activated:

- 1 Use the accelerator pedal to reach the desired speed, short press the 'Set' button (6) on the end of the adaptive cruise switch lever, release the control button and accelerator pedal. The vehicle will cruise at the desired speed.
- 2 Move the lever switch upward (1) and hold, the target speed will increase until the desired set speed appears in the instrument pack, then release the switch. When it is confirmed that there is no vehicle in front of your vehicle or the vehicle ahead exceeds the preselected following distance, the speed will be increased to the set speed.
- 3 Move the lever switch downward (2) and hold, the target speed will decrease until the desired set speed appears in the instrument pack, then release the switch, the vehicle speed will decrease to the set speed.
- 4 When using the lever to adjust the target speed, briefly operate the adaptive cruise

lever switch upward (1) or downward (2) once, the target speed will change 5

km/h, press and hold the lever upward or downward and the speed will increase or decrease in 1 km/h increments, release the lever when the desired speed reading is displayed.

Note: If the vehicle ahead continually makes hard acceleration or deceleration manoeuvres the adaptive cruise control may not be able accurately maintain the required distance between vehicles. It is important that the driver always concentrates and pay attention to the current vehicle position and situation in case they need to make a braking or avoidance manoeuvre.

Adaptive Cruise Target Following Distance Adjustment

When the adaptive cruise control system is activated, rotate the switch on the end of the lever upward (8) or downward (9) to adjust the following distance, you are able to toggle between 3 distance settings which are displayed in the message centre in the instrument pack.

Always select an appropriate following distance that is relative to the current speed of your vehicle and the vehicle you are following, the greater the speed, the further the distance. ALWAYS consider current traffic, road and weather conditions when making your selection.

Adaptive Cruise Pause/Standby

When the adaptive cruise control system is activated, move the lever switch to the 'Cancel' position (3), and the system will exit to the Standby mode.

Automatic Deactivation of Adaptive Cruise

In the following situations, the adaptive cruise control system may be automatically deactivated, this transfers full control of the vehicle to the driver.

- Move the lever switch to 'OFF' position (7).
- Press the brake pedal whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- Move the rotary gear knob to either R or N position.
- The driver unfastens his/her seat belt.
- Press and hold the accelerator pedal beyond a preset time period.
- Open any door, bonnet or tailgate.
- Pull the EPB switch up to apply the parking brake.
- Follow the vehicle ahead to a stop and the stop time exceeds a certain period of time.
- The camera or radar view is blocked, the surrounding environment triggers the preset safe exit mechanism of the sensors, or the system fails.

Note: *If following the vehicle ahead to a stop with the adaptive cruise control system enabled, if any of the following conditions occur whilst the vehicle is in a stopped state, the EPB will automatically be applied:*

- *The driver unfastens his/her seat belt.*
- *The driver door is opened.*
- *The stationary time exceeds the preset time period.*

Adaptive Cruise Override

If the driver has cause to use the accelerator pedal when the adaptive cruise control system is activated, the vehicle will remain in Cruise mode while the vehicle speed increases. When the accelerator pedal is released, the adaptive cruise control system will resume to operate at previously set cruise speed.

Adaptive Cruise Resume

If the adaptive cruise control system has reverted to, or been switched to, the Standby mode it can be reactivated by moving the lever switch to the 'Resume' position (5).

The target cruise speed will automatically be set to the target speed before exiting the adaptive cruise control system.

Clear Speed Memory

If the lever switch is moved to the 'OFF' position (7) or the vehicle START/STOP Switch is switched to the OFF position, the system may clear the adaptive cruise control set speed in the memory.

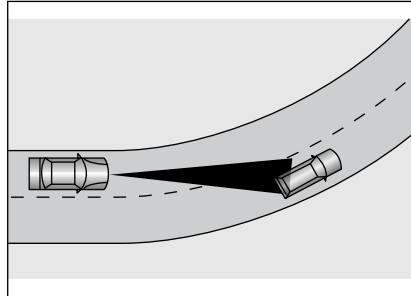
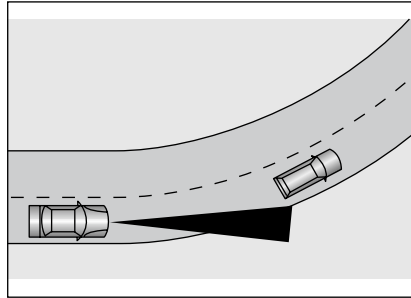
Adaptive Cruise Control System Impairment and Ineffectiveness

- Encounters a vehicle or object which is stationary or traversing the lanes.
- Approaching the vehicle ahead too fast, and the system cannot apply sufficient braking force.
- The vehicle ahead is an oncoming vehicle, or makes an emergency braking manoeuvre.
- A vehicle suddenly cuts into the lane in front.
- Encounters a vehicle driving at a low speed.
- Encounters a vehicle with loaded items protruding from the body profile of the vehicle.
- Encounters a vehicle with a higher chassis (e.g., a truck).

- Encounters pedestrians, non-motor vehicles or animals.
- The vehicle is driving on an uneven road or a complex traffic road section.
- The vehicle makes a sharp turn.
- Enters and leaves a tunnel or drives in the tunnel.
- Drives in the shade of mottled trees.
- Excessive weight being carried in the boot space or cargo area causing the front of the car to point upwards.

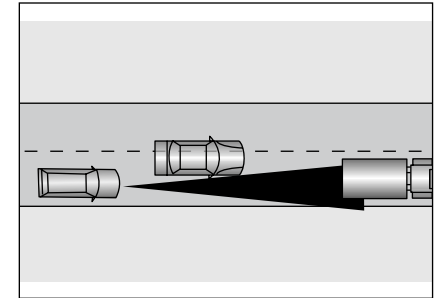
Special Driving Environments

The adaptive cruise control system has its limitations. Listed below are some conditions that may be beyond the safe operating limits. The driver should maintain control of the vehicle and must remain alert at all times. They should pay special attention to the traffic conditions and surroundings, select the appropriate speed and be ready to take any required actions.



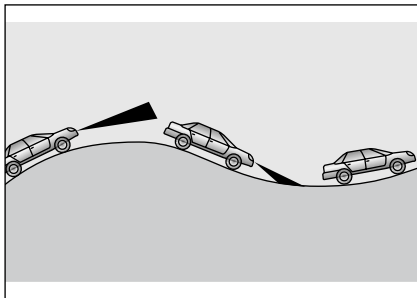
When turning at an intersection or following a vehicle into, or out of a curve, the adaptive cruise control system may be unable to detect the vehicle ahead, even if it is in the same lane, it is possible the system may detect a vehicle in another lane.

Note: Do not use the adaptive cruise control system on entrance/exit ramps or sharp bends.

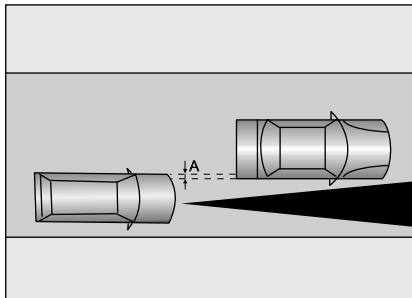


If the vehicle ahead changes lanes, but does not drive into the lane completely, the adaptive cruise control system may be unable to detect the vehicle.

If the vehicle ahead changes lanes, but does not exit the lane completely, the adaptive cruise control system may determine that the vehicle ahead has exited the lane and accelerate to any preset speed.



When driving on uneven roads that may include steep climbs or dips please **DO NOT** use the adaptive cruise control system.



When driving behind a vehicle that is only partially overlapping your vehicle, 'A' in the graphic, the adaptive cruise control system may be unable to detect anything.

Note: Please *DO NOT* use the adaptive cruise control system in the following situations:

- ***Driving in bad weather conditions.***
- ***When the ambient light is insufficient, the light is too much, or the front lighting of the vehicle is poor.***
- ***Driving on rough or poor road surfaces.***

- ***Driving through roadworks or construction sites.***
- ***Driving on low friction roads.***

Driving Assist System *

The driving assist system can detect the road and environmental information ahead of the vehicle by utilising a front view camera and a front detection radar under certain conditions. This information is used to relay warning messages or provide assistance to help the driver in controlling the vehicle in a safer and more reliable manner. The front view camera is located in the interior rearview mirror base cover, the front detection radar is located at the lower middle of the front bumper.

Note: DO NOT operate any infotainment switches whilst driving. If you wish to make any settings changes, please pull over when it is safe and legal to do so.

Description of Front View Camera

Calibration of front view camera

The front view camera will require re-calibration after any of the following operations:

- Removal and refitting of the front view camera.
- Replacement of the windscreen.

Note: The calibration of front view

camera requires professional knowledge and tools. If calibration is required, please seek an MG Authorised Repairer.

Obstruction of the front view camera

On occasion the front view camera view may become obstructed by foreign objects or stains on the glass. In these cases a prompt message will appear in the information centre. Please wipe or clean immediately.

In the following situations, the detection performance of front view camera will be affected:

- Driving in poor weather conditions where visibility is reduced due to thick fog, heavy rain, snow, dust or sand storm etc.
- Affected by light, for example low light levels at night, poor auxiliary lighting, excessive backlighting in the view, light from oncoming vehicles, abrupt change of brightness with a quick bright/dark jump (tunnel entrance/exit), driving on surfaces with strong reflective properties (road surface covered with water or snow), tunnels, inside a building etc.

- The front view camera view is partially or fully blocked by obstacles, e.g. dust, foreign objects, oil pollution, mud, snow, excessive water (rain), frost or water spray from the road on the windscreen.
- The windscreen viewing area is damaged.
- Not calibrated after removing/refitting the front view camera or the windscreen.
- The front view camera is not secured in place.

Description of Front Detection Radar

Calibration of front detection radar

The front detection radar re-calibration is required after any of the following:

- The front detection radar mis-alignment failure, for example the position of the front detection radar has changed.
- Remove/refit the front detection radar or radar bracket.
- Remove/refit the front anti-collision beam.
- The four-wheel alignment parameters have changed.

Note: *If the front detection radar is subject to strong vibration or slight impact, the mounting position of the front detection radar needs to be checked and re-calibrated as necessary.*

Note: *The calibration of front detection radar requires professional knowledge and tools. If calibration is required, please seek an MG Authorised Repairer.*

Front radar performance will be effected in the following situations:

- When the front detection radar is covered by mud, snow, excessive water (rain) or water spray from the road.
- When the radar or surrounding areas are covered by objects such as labels or auxiliary lighting installation.
- When the front detection radar is subject to strong vibration or slight impact.
- Some targets may affect and weaken the detection capability of the front detection radar, such as road barriers, fences and tunnel entrances.

- When the front detection radar is affected by the environment, such as strong electromagnetic field interference or due to the target itself.
- Strong reflected radar signals (such as: in multi-storey car parks, tunnels, sprinkler spray systems or water jets etc). Experiencing any of these could cause the function of the front detection radar to be effected.

Note: *Any snow that gathers on the front radar may be removed using a soft brush, and any ice should be removed using a propriety deicing spray.*

Note: *Avoid any collision or contact with the front radar module, this may cause misalignment.*

Speed Assist System



The intelligent speed limit is an auxiliary function, it may display an incorrect speed limit value or no speed limit value in the instrument pack due to various factors. As a result, the vehicle speed is not restricted within the correct range. The driver still needs to observe the speed limit of the road traffic, and speeding is strictly prohibited.



The front view camera cannot recognise speed limit signs painted on the road surface. The driver MUST observe these speed limits and adjust the their speed accordingly.

The speed assist system settings are available via the infotainment system. When the adaptive cruise control system is OFF, the following three functions can be selected:

60

- 1 **Speed warning Function (Speed warning):** The vehicle detects a speed limit sign (as shown above) at the roadside with the front view camera. The speed limit sign identified will be displayed on the instrument pack. When the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit by a preset amount, a visual warning in the instrument pack will alert the driver to control the speed manually.
- 2 **Manual Speed Assist (Manual):** The driver sets the target speed limit value using the adaptive cruise control lever. The system will actively intervene and keep the vehicle speed within the target speed limit. An acoustic warning and a visual warning will be available during the intervention. Please refer to the section "Speed settings of manual speed assist".
- 3 **Intelligent Speed Assist (Intelligent):** The vehicle detects a speed limit sign (as shown above) at the roadside with the front view camera. The speed limit sign identified will be displayed on the instrument pack. The system will automatically intervene and maintain speed control to keep the vehicle speed within the permitted maximum speed

limit. And an acoustic warning and a visual warning will be available during the intervention.

Speed assist system setting

The operating interface for the speed assistance system is located in the infotainment display. Enter the vehicle setting interface to locate the driving assist option, scroll across the page to find the setting interface for the speed assist system:

- 1 Touch the corresponding button on the infotainment display to select the speed assist mode: off, Speed warning, Manual and Intelligent.

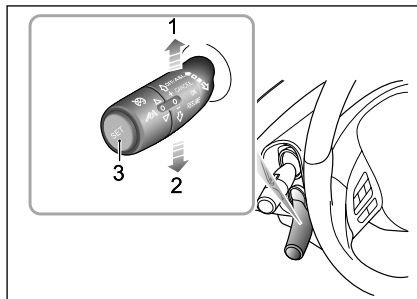
Speed settings of manual speed assist:

After the manual speed assist function is enabled, the speed limit value can be set by using the adaptive cruise control lever as follows:

- 1 With the manual speed assist function enabled, the initial speed limit value is displayed as "—" on the instrument pack. Press the SET button (3 in the figure below), the manual speed assist function will be activated. The first time pressing the set button, if the current actual speed is lower than 30km/h, the speed limit

value displayed in the instrument pack is defined as 30km/h; if the current actual speed is higher than 30km/h, the speed limit value displayed in the instrument pack will be defined by the current actual speed. Moving the lever up or down once will increase or decrease the speed limit value to the rounding up value or rounding down value, then moving up or down once will increase or decrease by 5km/h. Holding the lever up or down, the speed limit value will continuously change in units of 5km/h.

- 2 After the manual speed assist function is activated, the system will actively intervene and keep the vehicle speed within the target speed limit. If the current actual speed exceeds the target speed limit value set by the driver, the system will reduce the speed until it is below the target speed limit.
- 3 After the manual speed assist function is activated, the driver can press the SET button (3 in the figure below) on the adaptive cruise control lever to reinstate the system to standby state. Press the SET button again, the manual speed assist function will be resumed.



When the speed warning function or intelligent speed assist function is enabled, the system indicator lamp on the instrument pack illuminates green.

When the manual speed assist function is enabled, the system indicator lamp on the instrument pack illuminates yellow. When the function is activated by pressing the SET button on the adaptive cruise control lever, the system indicator lamp illuminates green.

If the speed assist system detects a fault or failure, the indicator lamp will flash yellow then extinguish.



When the speed warning function or intelligent speed assist function is enabled, the speed limit value indication illuminates. The “NNN” is displayed as “—”. When the vehicle passes the first speed limit sign identified, the speed limit indication displays the real-time speed limit value.

Note: *When the vehicle needs to change lane, make a turn or turn around at an intersection and the driver uses an indicator in advance and slows down, the original speed limit value on the instrument pack will be reset and displayed as “—” until a new speed limit sign is detected. If the conditions are not met, the original speed limit value will be maintained and not be reset. The driver MUST observe the speed limits and adjust their speed accordingly.*

When the manual speed assist function is enabled, the speed limit value indication illuminates. The “NNN” is displayed as “—”. Press the SET button to activate the manual speed assist function, The “NNN” is displayed as 30km/h or the current actual speed. Move the adaptive cruise control lever up and down to adjust the target speed limit value.

The driver can directly switch off, or temporarily suspend the speed assist system by carry out the following actions:

- 1 To temporarily exceed the speed limit (overtaking manoeuvre), press the accelerator pedal hard. The indicator lamp in the instrument pack illuminates green, and the speed limit value flashes.
- 2 Gently press the SET button on the end of the adaptive cruise control lever, the indicator lamp in the instrument pack will change to yellow. Press the SET button again to resume the functions.
- 3 Move the adaptive cruise control lever to “ON” position to switch the speed assistance system off. Then the indicator lamp in the instrument pack will extinguish.


The speed limit information function and intelligent speed limit function may be impaired in the following situations:


- 1 The detection performance of front view camera is affected.
- 2 The vehicle is driven at a high speed.
- 3 The speed limit signs are obscured by trees along the road, ice/frost, snow, dust, etc.
- 4 The speed limit signs are incorrectly placed or damaged.
- 5 There are multiple speed limit signs above the lane or on the sides of the road. Currently, the front view camera can only recognise the speed limit signs for the lane in which the vehicle is being driven.
- 6 Non standard speed limit signs or signs that contain additional information.
- 7 The speed limit signs set up at a fork in the road, on a bend or on-ramp/off-ramp.
- 8 During manoeuvres such as lane-changing.

IMPORTANT

- The camera may not correctly recognise speed limit signs during poor lighting conditions, bad weather, non-standardized or sheltered speed limit signs or the camera's own restrictions which include the recognition of similar signs (e.g., recognise a weight limit sign as a speed limit sign, or recognise a minimum speed sign as the maximum speed sign).
- Some drastic or rapid steering operations made by the driver may be judged as changing lane or turning around at an intersection by the system. This will result in the identified speed limit signs being cleared.

Lane Assist System

 **The lane assist system is an auxiliary system that provides assistance to the driver. It does NOT remove the responsibility of safe driving from the driver. When choosing to use the lane assist system, the driver MUST always pay attention to the surroundings, hold the steering wheel and be prepared to make manoeuvres at any time. Failure to maintain overall control of the vehicle may result in an accident or personal injury.**

 **The lane assist system does not always recognise the lane lines. Sometimes poor road surfaces, certain road structures or objects may be mistaken for lane lines. When such situations occur, the lane assist system must be immediately turned off.**

The lane assist system switch is located in the infotainment display. Enter the corresponding interface for driving assistance to turn the system ON/OFF, and make mode selection.

Lane Departure Warning

The system uses the front view camera to detect the lane lines ahead of the vehicle. The system will be activated when the following detection conditions are met:

- The function is switched ON,
- Vehicle speed is above 60 km/h,
- Lane line markings are clear and the system recognises at least one lane line.

When a wheel is about to cross the lane line, or has already crossed the line, the system will provide warnings to prompt the driver to take action and maintain the vehicle position between the lane lines. The function will automatically exit when the vehicle speed drops below 55 km/h.

Lane Departure Prevention

The system uses the front view camera to detect the lane lines ahead of the vehicle. The system will be activated when the following detection conditions are met:

- The function is switched ON,
- Vehicle speed is above 60 km/h,
- Lane line markings are clear and the system recognises at least one lane line.

When a wheel is about to cross the lane line, or has already crossed the line, the system will provide assistance to the driver by keeping the vehicle in between the lane lines by applying corrective steering intervention and simultaneously displaying a prompt. If the vehicle deviates from the lane lines too much, the system will activate the alert function. The function will automatically exit when the vehicle speed drops below 55 km/h.

Lane Keeping Assist

The system uses the front view camera to detect the lane lines ahead of the vehicle. The system will be activated when the following detection conditions are met:

- The function is switched ON,
- Vehicle speed is above 60 km/h,
- Lane line markings are clear and the system detects lane lines on both sides of the vehicle.

The system will always attempt to maintain the vehicle position in the centre of the lane by using corrective steering interventions. If the vehicle deviates from the lane lines too much, the system will activate the alert function. The function will automatically exit when the vehicle speed drops below 55 km/h.

In the absence of a steering input from the driver for a certain period of time, the system will provide warnings.

IMPORTANT

- In cases where the number of lanes increase or lanes merge, the driver **MUST** take full control of the vehicle.
- In areas where there are complex traffic conditions such as intersections or road junctions with congestion, the driver **MUST** take full control of the vehicle.

The lane assist system will be impaired or ineffective in the following conditions:


- The hazard lamps are activated.
- The driver indicates in the direction of the lane line about to be crossed.
- The driver applies the accelerator rapidly, carries out an emergency manoeuvre or makes a hard brake pedal application.
- The system detects that the driver has not moved the steering wheel for a preset time period (in the mode of departure assist or lane keeping).
- During system intervention the steering wheel is operated (in the mode of departure assist or lane keeping).
- The lane line is too thin, damaged, or fuzzy.
- The vehicle is driven on the bend with a small curvature radius, the road is too narrow or too wide.
- The vehicle has just entered a road section with lane lines or is driven on a road section without lane lines.
- The vehicle changes lanes or sways laterally too fast.


- The vehicle is not in D.
- The vehicle speed is below 55 km/h, or too high.
- The anti-lock brake system (ABS) and the dynamic stability control system (SCS) are activated.
- Faults exist in the anti-lock brake system (ABS), dynamic stability control system (SCS), electric power steering system (EPS), etc.


It is recommended to turn off the lane assist system in the following situations:


- Driving in a sports style or manner.
- Driving in bad weather conditions.
- Driving on rough or poor road surfaces.
- Driving through roadworks or construction sites.

Forward Collision System

 **The driver remains responsible for the safety of the entire driving process, even if the vehicle is equipped with a forward collision system. The driver *MUST* pay full attention and drive carefully. As with all the driver assist systems, the forward collision system cannot prevent accidents or avoid collisions in all situations. The driver *MUST* always remain in control to avoid accidents or emergency situations.**

 **Emergency braking whilst under the control of the forward collision system may cause injuries to the passengers. Therefore, drive carefully and all passengers *MUST* wear seat belts at all times.**

 **Ensure the forward collision system or vehicle power system is switched off when being towed. If the forward collision system is enabled when the vehicle is being towed, adverse effects may affect the safety of your vehicle, the towing vehicle and the people around.**

 **To avoid the occurrence of accidents, never specially test the functions of the forward collision system.**

The forward collision system switch is located in the infotainment display. Enter the corresponding interface for driving assistance to turn the system ON/OFF, and make mode selection.

Alert

When the system detects that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the vehicle in front in the same lane, warnings will be provided to prompt the driver to slow down in time and keep a relatively safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

Emergency braking

When the system detects that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the vehicle directly in front of the vehicle, the brake system will automatically intervene to decelerate the vehicle, so as to avoid collision accidents or mitigate damage from collision accidents. If the vehicle is braked and stopped under the system control, it will remain stationary for a short time. Full control of the vehicle will then be returned to the driver.

Pedestrian auto emergency braking

When the system detects that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the mobile pedestrian directly in front of the vehicle, the brake system will automatically intervene to decelerate the vehicle, so as to avoid collision accidents or mitigate damage from collision accidents. If the vehicle is braked and stopped under the system control, it will remain stationary for a short time. Full control of the vehicle will then be returned to the driver.

The system will only slow down the vehicle automatically if the following conditions are met:

- The dynamic stability control system (SCS) and traction control system (TCS) are fault-free and ON.
- The vehicle is in D or N.
- The airbags are not deployed.

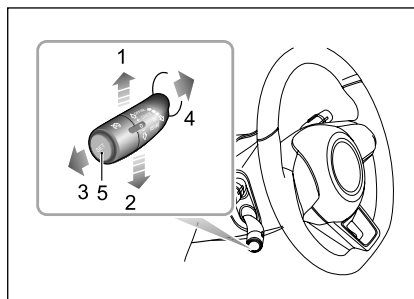
Note: In some cases, the driver may not have anticipated any braking intervention and does not want to apply the brakes whilst the forward collision system is braking heavily, the driver can temporarily cancel this operation by heavily pressing the accelerator pedal after ensuring that it is safe to do so.

The operation of the forward collision system may be impaired or ineffective in the following situations:

- The vehicle ahead approaches head-on, crosses the intersection or jumps the queue rapidly in a short distance.
- The vehicle ahead does not follow the rules of driving and parking (such as drives on the lane lines).
- The vehicle ahead is not in the same lane as your vehicle or the vehicle ahead is partially obscured.
- The vehicle ahead is an abnormal vehicle (modified or abnormal shape).
- The vehicle ahead is a vehicle with higher chassis.
- The vehicle ahead is large vehicle at close range (such as tractor, trailer, towing vehicle, mud truck, sanitation truck, sprinkler truck etc.).
- The vehicle ahead is unusual transportation (such as a horse, cart, carriages etc.).
- The system detects the side of a vehicle.
- The contour of the vehicle ahead is unclear (such as water being sprayed by the wheels of the front and surrounding vehicles).
- The vehicle ahead does not have or has obscured tail lamps when driving at night or in a tunnel.
- The tail lamps of the vehicle ahead are all LED strip lights or other homemade coloured lamps.
- The street lights are inconsistent or flickering when driving at night.
- The pedestrian is not directly in front of the vehicle, or the pedestrian is not fully visible.
- The pedestrian is not standing upright, or it is a child under a certain height.
- In front of the vehicle are a crowd of pedestrians, the pedestrian is over-shadowed or in the dark.
- There are animals in front of the vehicle.
- Objects such as special-shaped ground obstacles (e.g. roadblocks, isolation piles, isolation strips, large stones, other scattered objects etc.) are detected in front of the vehicle.

- Objects such as signs, guardrails, bridges, buildings or other are detected in front of the vehicle.
- The vehicle is being driven on hillside road, upper and lower bridge section or tight bend.
- The vehicle is in R.
- The vehicle is in the state of braking or rapid acceleration.

Active Speed Limit (ASL) System *



- Speed Limit Increase (1)
- Speed Limit Decrease (2)
- ASL Standby (3)
- Cruise Standby (4)
- Set (5)

The Active Speed Limit (ASL) system is designed to control the vehicle speed keeping it below a speed set by the driver. The ASL system shares the same lever switch as the cruise control system, located to the left of the steering wheel below the indicator stalk. The switch can be toggled between both functions, however only one function can operate at any one time.

Activate

The desired target speed of the ASL system is displayed in the instrument information cluster.

With the START/STOP Switch in position ON/RUNNING and the lever switch in “ASL Standby” (3 in figure), the ASL function is in standby mode. Pressing the “Set” button (5 in figure) will activate the ASL system. When activated and vehicle speed is less than or equal to 30 km/h, then the target speed limit value will be set at 30 km/h by default. When activated and vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h, then the current vehicle speed will be set as the target speed limit value. Firstly, the target speed limit value will be rounded when the lever switch is moved upwards or downwards. Then, the target speed limit value will be increased or decreased by 5 km/h every time the lever switch is briefly moved upwards or downwards. Move the lever upwards or downwards and hold, the target speed limit value will change continuously in units of 5km/h. The range of target speed adjustment is 30 - 200km/h.

When activated if the vehicle speed is greater than the user inputted target speed the system will begin to slow the vehicle to the inputted target.

When ASL is active, pressed the accelerator pedal fully (eg: overtaking) can make the vehicle speed increased. When released the pedal, vehicle speed will subject to the target speed limit value.

Suspend ASL

When ASL is active, to suspend the feature press the “Set” button (5 in figure) and the ASL system will exit to the standby state.

Resume ASL

If the system has been placed in a standby state with a retained target speed the system can be reactivated to the previously stored target speed by pressing the “Set” button (5 in figure).

Note: When ASL is suspended, if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed (eg: overtaking), the system can not be reactivated.

Exit ASL

Pull the lever switch to “Cruise Standby” position (4 in figure), ASL system will exit.

Note: ASL system brakes the vehicle relied on the engine, which has limited braking capacity. ASL is not a substitute for the brakes. In case of steep slopes and other needs to brake quickly, please press the brake pedal to brake the vehicle.

Parking Aid System

Ultrasonic Sensor Parking Aid

! *The purpose of the parking aid is to assist the driver in reversing! The sensors may not be able to detect obstacles of certain type, e.g. narrow posts or small objects no more than a few inches wide, small objects close to the ground, objects above the tailgate and some objects with non-reflective surfaces.*

! *Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow. If deposits build up on the surface of the sensors, their performance may be impaired. When washing the car, avoid aiming high pressure water jets directly at the sensors from close range.*

Rear Parking Aid

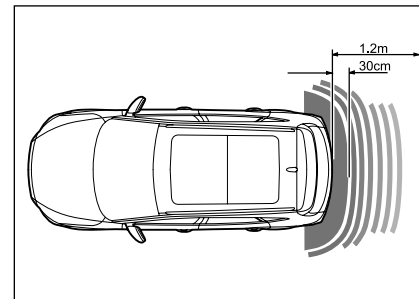
The ultrasonic sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle to search for obstacles. If any obstacle is detected, the system will calculate its distance from the rear of the vehicle and communicates the message to the driver by sounding warning chimes.

Parking Aid in Operation

The rear parking aid is enabled automatically when reverse is selected, it is switched off as soon as reverse is disengaged. A short beep is given by the parking aid within 1 second after selecting reverse to indicate that the system is operating normally.

Note: *If a longer, higher pitched sound is emitted for 3 seconds when reverse is selected this indicates a fault in the system. In this case seek assistance from your MG Authorised Repairer.*

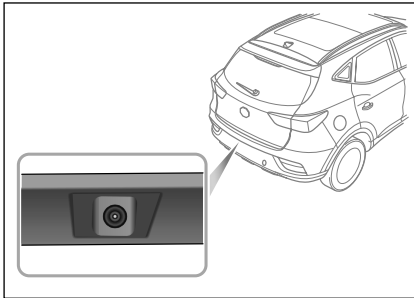
With the parking aid enabled, when obstacles are detected, the system will give sounds in different frequencies (there might be blind areas).



- If there is an obstacle within 1.2m range from the rear sensors, the system starts to emit a beeping sound. As the vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the beeps are transmitted more rapidly.
- Once the obstruction is within 30cm range of the rear bumper, the beeps will merge into a continuous warning.

Parking Camera System *

- !** *The purpose of the parking camera system is to assist the driver in reversing! The camera has limited field of view and cannot detect obstacles outside the field of view.*



The parking camera is fitted between left and right license plate lamps. When the reverse is selected, the camera will display an image of what is directly behind the car in the entertainment display, and the system supports the indication of distance from obstacles to vehicles.

360 Panoramic Imaging System *

- !** *The purpose of the 360 panoramic imaging system is to assist the driver during reversing! The cameras have a limited field of view and cannot detect obstructions outside the field of view.*

- !** *Although the entertainment display can provide high-definition images around the vehicle, please still pay attention to the current actual road conditions for your driving safety.*

- !** *Make sure the exterior rear-view mirror is deployed, when using the 360 panoramic imaging system.*

With the 360 panoramic imaging system working, the display interface will show a 360° panoramic image of the vehicle to facilitate the observation of the surrounding environment. you are able to touch different areas around the vehicle to check images from different angles of view.

The 360 panoramic imaging system can be accessed in the following ways:

- Select R gear.
- Press the 360 view button.
- In the setting interface, turn on the turning assistant display function. At low speed, turn on the left or right corner light.

In the 360 panoramic image display interface, press the settings button to personalize the relevant functions of the system.

Note: *When the shift lever is placed in forward gear position, in no case can 360 panoramic imaging system be enabled as long as the vehicle speed exceeds or equals to 15 km/h.*

Rear Driver Assistance System *

System Overview

! The effective recognition capabilities of the rear sensors can be limited by objects such as roadside buildings, guardrails, changes in pitch angle of the car due to heavy loading, road conditions such as bends or bumps or weather conditions such as snow and ice etc. Any of the above may trigger a false alarm.

! The rear driver assist system may not provide adequate warning of very fast approaching vehicles or operate correctly on tight curves of 500m radius or less.

! The rear driver assist system will not operate correctly whilst towing a trailer or caravan.

! The system has limitations and may not be able to warn of vehicles approaching at high speeds.

! The rear driver assistance function is only an aid, it is **NOT** a substitute for the attention of the driver. The driver must always remain in control,

observe the surroundings and drive safely.

! The correct operation of the rear sensors will be compromised if they are misaligned due to accident damage. This may cause the system to automatically shutdown.

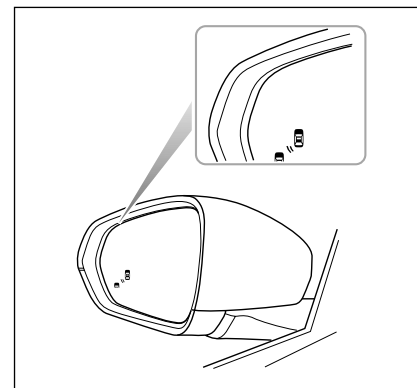
! To ensure that the radar sensors work correctly, the rear bumper should be kept free of snow and ice and must not be covered.

! Use of non recommended materials or paint on rear bumper repairs may have a detrimental effect on the operation of the rear sensors. Please only use recommended materials.

The rear driver assistance system includes blind spot detection (BSD), lane change assist (LCA), and rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) functions.

The rear driver assistance modules are mounted at the rear of the vehicle on each side, they can assist in detecting vehicles behind or to the side of your vehicle.

The warning lamps to support this system are located within the LH and RH door mirror glasses, they will illuminate or flash to warn of an approaching object or car to assist you in manoeuvring the car safely.



Note: The radar requires calibration on new vehicles or for vehicles of where a rear detecting radar sensor has been replaced. The rear detection radar sensors possess an automatic calibration function to compensate for installation error within a certain range. When the vehicle is running, the radar will automatically enter the calibration state. During the calibration process, the system will provide limited functions, and the alarm may be inaccurate. Upon completion of the calibration, the system will resume all functions.

Switching the System Functions On/Off

The rear driver assist system function and sub system switches can be accessed via the infotainment screen.

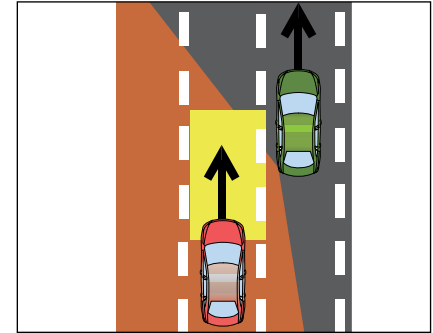
Select ON/OFF to activate/deactivate the system.

System Functions

Note: The detection area, collision time threshold value and vehicle speed provided in the system function description are just for your reference.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

When the vehicle is driving forward, the system will monitor the motor vehicles located in the blind zones of the left and right exterior mirrors. When the conditions for activating the blind spot detection function are met, the warning lamps in the corresponding mirror will illuminate. Subsequent operation of the relevant indicator will cause the warning lamp in the mirror to flash to remind the driver of an approaching vehicle.



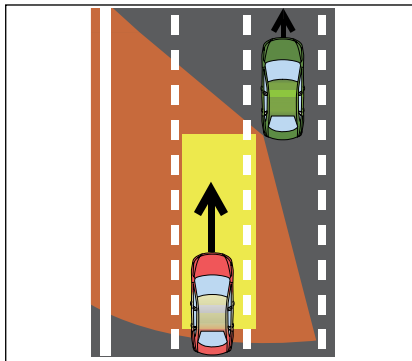
The conditions for activating the blind spot detection function include:

- 1 Rear driver assistance system is in the ON state and no faults are present in the system.
- 2 Blind spot detection (BSD) function is enabled.
- 3 The vehicle speed is above 30km/h.
- 4 There are motor vehicles in the blind zone of the vehicle. The system monitors both the left and right of the vehicle, the monitored areas are 2m ahead, 7m behind the rear of the vehicle, and 4.7m from the side of the vehicle.

Note: The warning lamps will not illuminate whilst you are overtaking another vehicle and your speed is greater than that of the vehicle you are passing, even though it is in the blind zone.

Lane Change Assist (LCA)

When the vehicle is driving forward, the system will monitor the motor vehicles approaching rapidly in the adjacent lanes. When the conditions for activating the lane change assist function are met, the warning lamps in the corresponding mirror will illuminate, once the indicators are activated, the warning lamps will flash to warn the driver of an approaching vehicle. This aims to help avoid collisions when changing lanes.

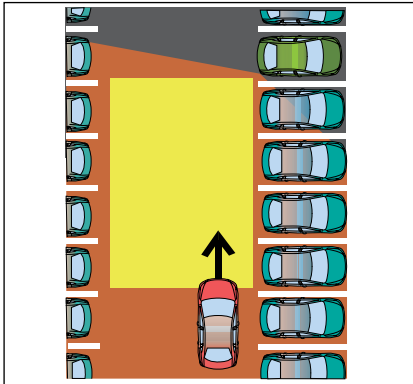


The conditions for activating the lane change assist function include:

- 1 Rear driver assistance system is in the ON state and no faults are present in the system.
- 2 Lane change assist (LCA) function is enabled.
- 3 The vehicle speed is above 30km/h.
- 4 The speed of the approaching vehicle is higher than the speed of your vehicle.
- 5 The approaching vehicle enters the detection area of the LCA, the monitored areas are 7 - 70m behind your vehicle and 4.7 m to the side of your vehicle.
- 6 The approaching vehicle is likely to have a collision with your vehicle within 3.5 seconds.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)


When the vehicle is reversing, the system will monitor vehicles approaching from the left and right rear. When the conditions for activating RCTA function are met, the warning lamps in the mirrors on the corresponding side will illuminate, parking information will be displayed in the infotainment screen to alert the driver to the situation.




The conditions for activating the rear cross traffic alert function include:

- 1 Rear driver assistance system is in the ON state and no faults are present in the system.
- 2 Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) function is enabled.
- 3 The vehicle is in Reverse gear.
- 4 The vehicle speed is less than 9km/h.
- 5 The speed of the vehicle being monitored is above 9km/h.
- 6 The motor vehicle drives across the system detection areas. The areas monitored to the left and right of the vehicle are 5m behind the rear of the vehicle, and 25m from the side.
- 7 The approaching vehicle is likely to have a collision with your vehicle within 2.5 seconds.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) *

 **TPMS can not replace routine maintenance and checks of tyre condition and pressures.**

 **Using equipment that transmits on frequencies similar to that of the TPMS may interfere with the operation of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System, this may illuminate a warning or register a temporary fault.**

Note: TPMS only warns of low tyre pressures, it does not re-inflate the tyre.

TPMS uses pressure sensors built into tyre valves to continuously monitor pressure and transmit data to the ECU inside the vehicle using RF signals. If it deduces that the pressure of that tyre has fallen below the predefined limit of the system, the warning light in the instrument pack will illuminate (always yellow). For more information, please refer to 'Instrument Pack' in 'Instruments and Controls' section. TPMS can remind you of low tyre pressure, but it can not replace normal tyre maintenance. For tyre maintenance, please refer to 'Tyres' in 'Maintenance' chapter.




If the TPMS malfunction indicator lamp illuminates, and the warning message "XX Tyre Pressure Low" is accompanied displayed, it is advised that you please stop the car as soon as possible, check the tyre pressure and inflate the tyre to correct pressure value. Driving with under-inflated tyres, the tyre will overheat and cause tyre fault. Using under-inflated tyres increase more energy consumption and result in shorter tread life, and may affect vehicle handling and braking performance. Always check/adjust tyre pressures when they are cold. The tyre pressure label attached to the vehicle indicates the correct amount of tyre inflation required for your vehicle when the tyre is cold.



TPMS Self-learning

When replacing a TPMS sensor and receiver, or performing tyre rotation, TPMS self-learning is required, please consult an MG Authorised Repairer for details.

Load Carrying

-  **DO NOT exceed the gross vehicle weight or the permitted front and rear axle loads. Failure may result in vehicle damage or serious injury.**

Load Space

-  **Ensure that the rear seat backrests are securely latched in the upright position when loads are carried in the load space behind the seats.**
-  **If the boot lid (or tailgate) can not be closed due to the type of cargo loaded, be sure to close all windows during driving, select the face distribution mode of the air condition, and set the blower to maximum speed, so as to decrease exhaust fumes entering the vehicle.**

When luggage carried in the boot, always ensure heavy items are placed as low and as far forward as possible, so as to avoid the cargo shift in the event of an accident or sudden stop.



Drive carefully and avoid emergency braking or maneuvers when large or heavy items are carried.

Driving with the boot lid (or tailgate) open is very dangerous. If the load being carried requires the boot lid (or tailgate) to be open, please ensure the cargo and the boot lid (or tailgate) are suitably secured and every measure is taken to prevent exhaust fumes entering the vehicle.

IMPORTANT

Traffic regulations must be observed when loading cargo, if the cargo extrudes the loadspace, appropriate warning measures must be taken to warn other road users.

Internal Loading

-  **DO NOT carry unsecured equipment, tools or luggage that could move, causing personal injury in the event of an accident, emergency braking or hard acceleration.**
-  **DO NOT obstruct the driver and passengers to keep right sitting posture and observation with loads.**

Folding the rear seats can increase luggage space, refer to “Rear Seat” in “Seats and Restraints” chapter.

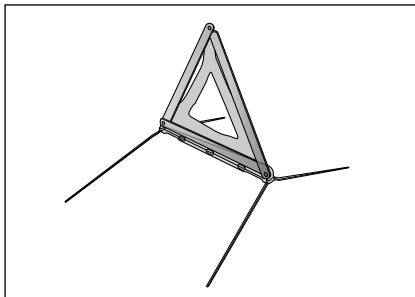
When cargo is loaded in the vehicle, place it at a position as low as possible and ensure that it is tightly secured, so as to avoid personal injury caused by cargo movement when traffic accidents or emergency brakes occur. If the cargo has to be put on a seat, no one is allowed to sit on that seat.

Emergency Information

Hazard Warning Devices	162
Emergency Starting.....	162
Vehicle Recovery	164
Wheel Replacement.....	167
Fuse Replacement.....	170
Bulb Replacement	175

Hazard Warning Devices

Warning Triangle






The warning triangle supplied with your car is stowed in the loadspace.

If you have to stop your car on the road in an emergency, you must place a warning triangle approximately 50 - 150 metres behind the car, if possible, and press the hazard warning switch to warn other road users of your position.

Emergency Starting


Using Booster Cables

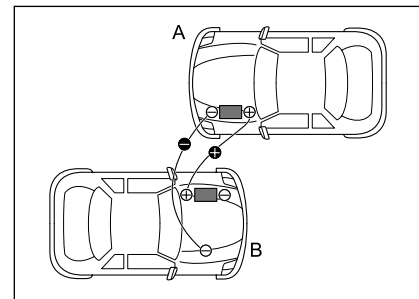
-  **NEVER** start the engine by pushing or towing.
-  **Make sure that BOTH batteries are of the same voltage (12 volts), and that the booster cables are approved for use with 12 volt car batteries.**
-  **Ensure sparks and naked lights are kept well away from the engine compartment.**

Using booster cables (jump leads) from a donor battery, or a battery fitted to a donor vehicle, is the only approved method of starting a car with a flat battery.

If the battery from a donor vehicle is to be used, the vehicles should be parked with their battery locations adjacent to one another. Ensure that the two vehicles do not touch.

Starting the Vehicle

-  **Ensure that each booster cable connection is securely made. There must be no risk of the clips accidentally slipping from the battery terminals (as a result of engine vibration, for example), this could cause sparking, which could lead to fire or explosion.**



Ensure the START/STOP Switch is turned off and switch off ALL electrical equipment of BOTH vehicles, then follow the instructions below:

- 1 Connect the RED booster cable between the positive (+) terminals of both batteries. Connect the BLACK booster cable from the negative (-) terminal of the donor battery (A) to a good earth point (an engine mounting or other unpainted surface, for example), as far away from the battery as possible and well away from fuel and brake lines on the disabled vehicle (B).
- 2 Check that the cables are clear of moving parts of both engines, then start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.
- 3 Now start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery (DO NOT crank the engine for more than 10 seconds). If the disabled vehicle will not start after several attempts, it may need to be repaired. Please contact the MG Authorised Repairer.
- 4 After both the vehicles have normally started, allow the engines to idle for more than 2 minutes before shutting down the engine of the donor vehicle and disconnecting the booster cables.

IMPORTANT

NEVER turn on any electrical equipment on the started vehicle before removing the booster cables.

- 5 Disconnecting the booster cables must be an exact reversal of the procedure used to connect them, i.e. disconnect the BLACK cable from the earth point on the disabled vehicle FIRST.

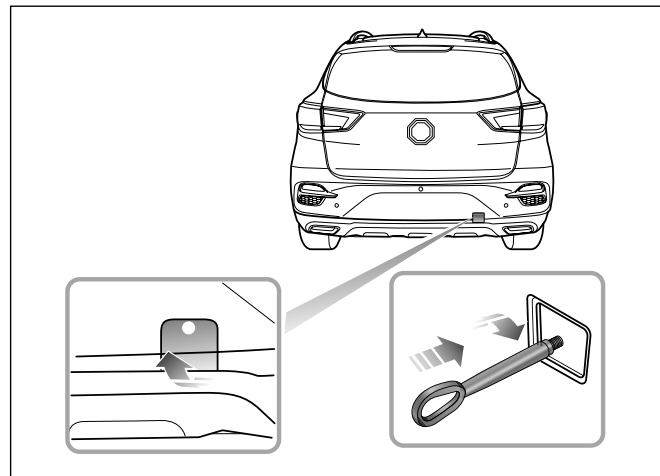
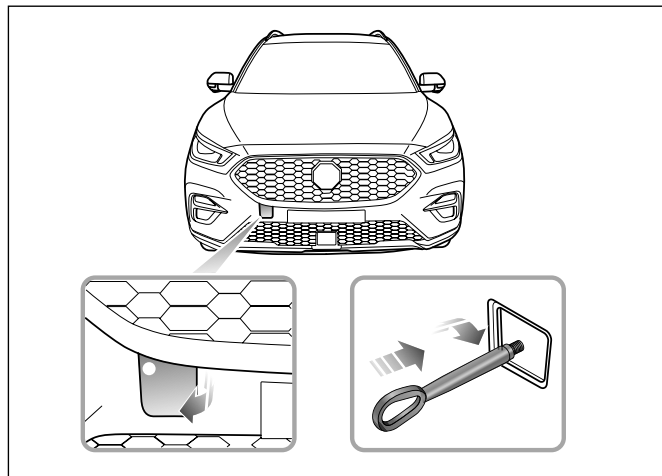
Note: It is recommended to ensure that the disabled vehicle runs for more than 1 hour after it is started, in order to recover the battery power.

Vehicle Recovery

Towing for Recovery

Towing Hook

! *DO NOT use a tow rope that is twisted - any untwisting force could unscrew the towing eye.*



Your car is equipped with a removable towing hook, that can be used at the front or the rear of your vehicle. The towing hook is stored in the tool kit beneath the loadspace floor when not in use.

To fit the towing hook, first press one end of the small cover plate (the white dot in the figure above), then open the small cover plate after the other end is lifted, then screw the towing hook through the small hole into the threaded hole on the bumper beam (as shown in the figure). Ensure the towing eye is fully tightened.

Note: The towing eye cover may be secured to the bumper by a plastic cord.

Both towing points are intended for use by qualified recovery specialists to assist in the recovery of your car when a breakdown or accident occur, such as pulling your vehicle onto the trailer, etc. They are not designed for towing other vehicles, and must NEVER be used to tow a trailer or caravan. The car can be towed by using a soft rope, but a hard rod is preferred.

Towing for Recovery

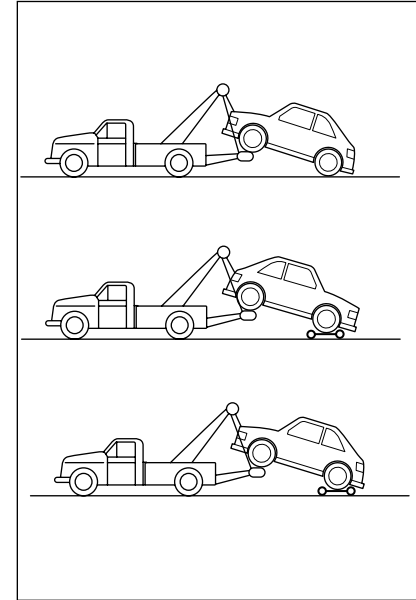
⚠ If, due to an electrical fault, potential safety hazards may exist, it is not allowed to put the START/STOP Switch in the ON position.

⚠ When towing, DO NOT suddenly accelerate or brake suddenly, this can cause accidents.

⚠ The towing speed of a vehicle must not exceed 30 km/h, the towing distance shall not exceed 50 km.

Suspended Towing

If your car needs to be towed, most qualified recovery specialists will use wheel lift equipment to suspend the front wheels, while the rear wheels remain on the ground. Ensure the parking brake is released, the hazard warning lamps are activated and no passengers are left in the vehicle.

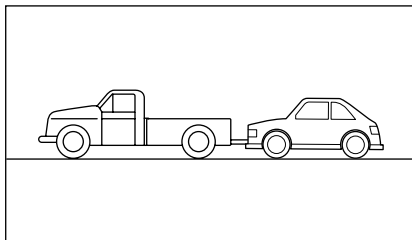


Four-Wheel Touchdown Towing

! DO NOT tow the vehicle equipped with CVT with four wheels on the ground. This type of vehicle can only be towed by suspended towing, otherwise the transmission may be damaged.

If vehicle is towed with the four wheels on the ground, observe the following precautions:

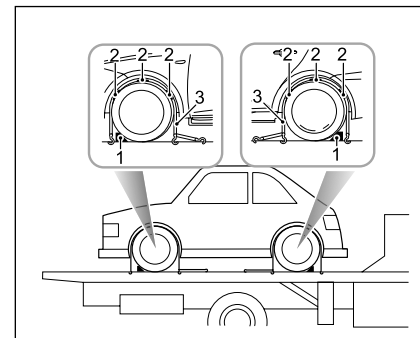
- 1 Switch the START/STOP Switch to the ON position to enable the brake lights, wipers and direction indicators to be operated if necessary.
- 2 If the battery power is low, please stop four-wheel touchdown towing and use other towing methods.
- 3 Place the shift lever in N position (manual transmission), or in N position (automatic transmission).
- 4 Release the parking brake.
- 5 Turn on the hazard warning lamps.
- 6 If the transmission is damaged or has a lack of lubricating oil, DO NOT tow the vehicle with four wheels on the ground.
- 7 DO NOT tow backward with front wheels (drive wheels) on the ground.



Without the engine running, greater effort may be required to operate the brake pedal and turn the steering wheel. Longer stopping distances will also be experienced.

Transporter or Trailer with Rope

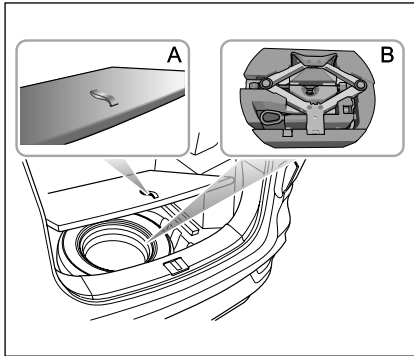
If your car is to be transported on the back of a trailer or transporter, it must be secured as illustrated:



- 1 Position the car on the trailer, apply the parking brake, and place the shift lever in N position (manual transmission), or in P position (automatic transmission).
- 2 Place the wheel chock (1) as shown in the figure, then place the anti slip rubber pad (2) around the circumference of the tyre.
- 3 Fit the lashing straps (3) around the wheels and secure to the trailer. Tighten the straps until the car is securely held.

Wheel Replacement

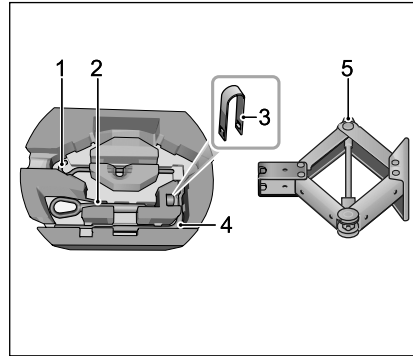
Spare Wheel and Toolbox



Spare Wheel and Tool Removal

- 1 Lift the carpet in the trunk with the lifting strap (A).
- 2 Remove the tool tray (B).
- 3 Unscrew the spare wheel retaining nut and lift the spare wheel from the trunk.

Spare wheel replacement tool



- 1 Jack handle
- 2 Towing hook
- 3 Wheel bolt cap removal tool
- 4 Wheel bolt spanner
- 5 Jack

Changing a Wheel

If you need to change the wheel during the journey, choose a safe place to stop away from the main thoroughfare if possible. Always ask your passengers to get out of the vehicle and wait in a safe area away from other traffic.

Switch on hazard warning lamps. If the conditions permit, place a warning triangle which is approximately 50 to 150 meters away behind the vehicle to warn other vehicles.

Before changing a wheel, ensure the front wheels are in the straight ahead position. Apply the parking brake, and place the shift lever in P position.

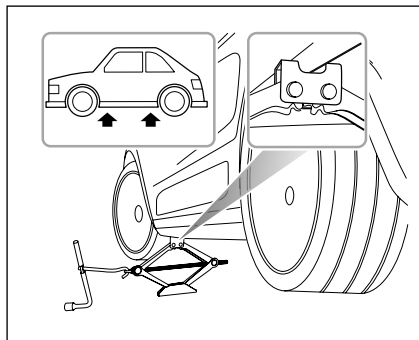
Observe the following precautions:

- Ensure the jack is positioned on firm, level ground.
- If vehicles have to be parked on the hill, wedge-shaped bumpers shall be placed before/after the other three wheels to avoid the vehicle moving.

Positioning the Jack

⚠ NEVER work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. The jack is designed for wheel changing only!

⚠ NEVER jack the vehicle using any jacking points other than the designated points shown. Otherwise serious damage to the vehicle could result.



Position the jack on firm level ground under the jacking point nearest the wheel to be removed. Make sure the rectangle slot of the jack must support the vehicle body revers (see the figure).

Turning the jack screw rod handle by hand, raise the jack until the jack head fits snugly on vehicle body revers. Ensure that the base of the jack is in full contact with the ground.

Replacing with Spare Wheel

⚠ Check the pressure of the spare wheel to avoid flat tyre as it is not used for a long time. Always check tyre pressures after changing a wheel.

⚠ After replacing the wheel, you must tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque (120~130Nm).

- 1 Before raising the vehicle, use the vehicle tool to remove each wheel bolt cap. Use the wheel spanner to slacken the bolt half a turn anti-clockwise.
- 2 Turn the jack handle in a clockwise direction until the tyre is clear of the ground.

Note: For your safety, please put the spare tyre under the vehicle body flanging area near the jack. Avoid the outer side of the wheel contacting the ground, and the rim surface may be scratched.

- 3 Remove the wheel bolts and place them in the toolbox to prevent them from being lost. Make sure the vehicle is steady and there is no risk of slip or movement before removing wheel bolts.

- 4 Remove wheels.

Note: Replace the spare wheel with the removed wheel and place it under the vehicle body flanging area near the jack. Avoid the outer side of the wheel contacting the ground, and the rim surface may be scratched.


- 5 Fit the spare wheel and tighten the wheel bolts until the wheel is seated firmly against the hub.
- 6 Lower the vehicle and remove the jack, then FULLY tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal sequence.
- 7 Finally, stow the tools back into the tool tray, and put the replaced wheel into the well under the trunk floor (with the wheel rim facing down).


Note: DO NOT stand on the handle of the wheel bolt spanner or use extension tube on the handle of the spanner.


Note: When replacing the wheel, please fully tighten the bolts in the diagonal sequence in 2 times.

Note: Contact an MG Authorised Repairer to replace with a new tyre urgently.

Spacesaver Spare Wheel *

 Only one spacesaver spare wheel can be used at any one time, otherwise the operational performance and brake performance may be reduced, thereby leading to accident or injury to yourself and others.

 When driving on icy or slippery surfaces it is advised to fit the spacesaver wheel to the rear of the vehicle to maintain adequate stability. This may mean swapping a front wheel with a rear wheel.

 Snow chains can not be used on the spacesaver spare wheel, this can cause damage to the car and snow chain.

When the spacesaver spare wheel is fitted, the vehicle speed should not exceed 80 km/h. Please have the full-scale tyre repaired and replace the spare wheel as soon as possible. This will extend the life span of the spare wheel for other emergencies.

Note: *DO NOT use an automatic car wash when the spacesaver wheel is fitted, the guide rails of the car wash may conflict with the wheel/tyre and cause damage.*

Fuse Replacement

Fuse

Fuses are simple circuit breakers which protect the vehicle electrical equipment by preventing the electrical circuits from being overloaded. A blown fuse indicates that the item of electrical equipment it protects stops working.

Check a suspect fuse by removing it from the fuse box and looking for a break in the wire inside the fuse.

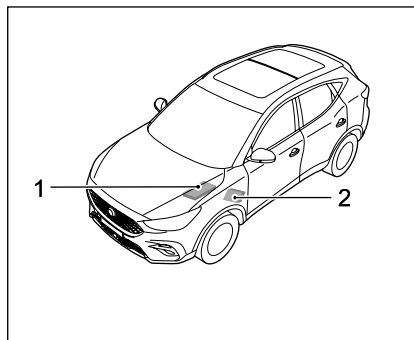
It is recommended to have spare fuses in the vehicle, which can be obtained from a local MG Authorised Repairer.

IMPORTANT

- NEVER attempt to repair a blown fuse. ALWAYS replace a fuse with one of the same rating.
- If a replaced fuse fails immediately, please contact an MG Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

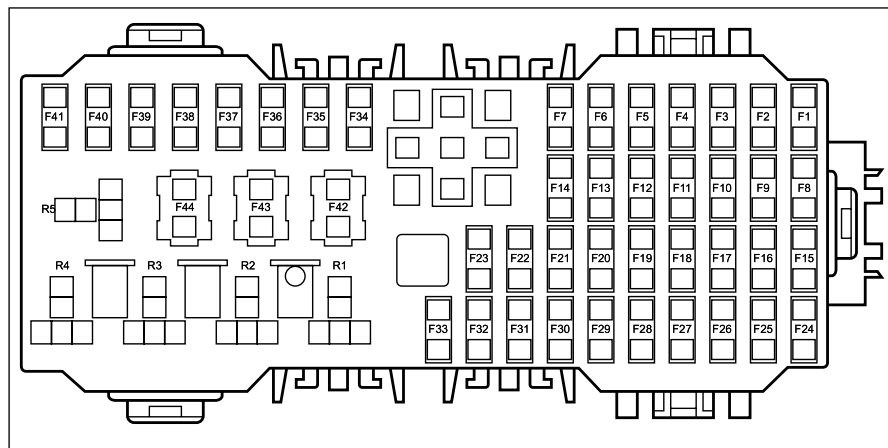
Fuse Box

There are two fuse boxes in the vehicle:



- 1 Front Compartment Fuse Box (at the left side of the Front Bay).
- 2 Passenger Compartment Fuse Box (below the glove box at the front passenger side).

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



Check or Replace a Fuse

- 1 Switch off the vehicle power system and all electrical equipment, disconnect the battery negative cable.
- 2 Remove the closing panel below the glove box to gain access to the fuse box.
- 3 Press the fuse extraction tool onto the fuse head and pull to remove the fuse. A blown fuse can be recognised by a break in the wire.
- 4 Replace the blown fuse with a same rating.

Emergency Information

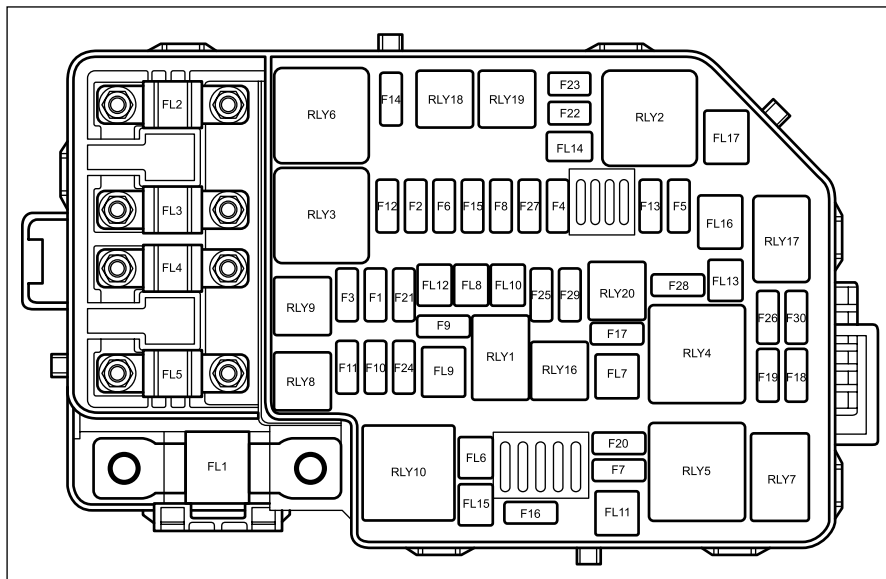
Fuse Specification

No.	Specs	Function
F1	15A	Front Washer Relay, Rear Washer Relay
F2	10A	Diagnostic Socket
F3	5A	PRND Display
F4	-	-
F5	10A	Airbag ECU (SDM)
F6	10A	Keyless Start/Stop Switch, Gateway
F7	30A	Driver Seat Adjust Switch
F8-F9	-	-
F10	10A	Voice Robot
F11-F14	-	-
F15	15A	Front Power Socket
F16	5A	Front Courtesy Lamp, Outside Mirror and Master Light Height Adjust Switch, Top USB, Left Headlamp Assembly, Right Headlamp Assembly
F17	5A	Rear USB
F18	5A	EPB Switch
F19	5A	Outside Mirror and Master Light Height Adjust Switch, Rain Light Sensor

No.	Specs	Function
F20	5A	Left Rear Driving Assistance Radar
F21	10A	360° View Module
F22	10A	Exterior Mirrors Heating Element
F23	25A	Rear Windscreen Heating Element
F24	20A	Front Central Display, Front Infotainment Control Module
F25	10A	Automatic Temperature Controller
F26	5A	Instrument Pack
F27	10A	Transmission Control Module-AT/CVT
F28	5A	Information Faceplate
F29	30A	Sunroof
F30	5A	TBOX
F31	5A	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System
F32	10A	Electronic Steering Column Lock
F33	30A	Sunroof
F34-F41	-	-
F42	25A	Stability Control Module(Valve)-MT

No.	Specs	Function
F43	30A	Passenger Window lift Switch, Rear Left Window Lift Switch
F44	30A	Driver Door Switch Pack, Driver Window Lifter, Rear Right Window Lift Switch

Front Compartment Fuse Box



Check or Replace a Fuse

- 1 Switch off the vehicle power system and all electrical equipment, disconnect the battery negative cable.
- 2 Press the locating clips to remove the fuse box lid.
- 3 Press the fuse extraction tool onto the fuse head and pull to remove the fuse. A blown fuse can be recognized by a break in the wire.
- 4 Replace the fuse with a same rating.

Fuse Specification

No.	Specs	Function
FL1	150A	Alternator
FL2	80A	Electric Power Steering Module
FL3	40A	Cooling Fan Relay Pack
FL4	80A	Windscreen/Mirror Heating Relay, Passenger Compartment Fuse F18, F19, F20, F21, F42, F43, F44
FL5	80A	KLR Relay, Passenger Compartment Fuse F1, F2, F3, F4, F5, F6, F7, F24, F25, F26, F27, F28, F29, F30, F31, F32, F33
FL6	-	-
FL7	40A	Automatic Temperature Controller, Blower
FL8	20A	Body Control Module
FL9	40A	Stability Control Module(Pump)
FL10 -FL12	-	-
FL13	30A	Starter Relay
FL14	-	-
FL15	30A	EVP Relay
FL16 -FL17	-	-

No.	Specs	Function
F1	10A	Right Headlamp Assembly
F2	15A	Downstream Lambda Sensor, Upstream Lambda Sensor, Canister Purge Valve (1.3T), Purge Washer Pump (1.3T)
F3	10A	Left Headlamp Assembly
F4	10A	Compressor Relay
F5	5A	Engine Control Module
F6	10A	Fuel Injector
F7	30A	Front Wiper Enable Relay, Front Wiper High/Low Speed Relay
F8	5A	Cooling Fan Relay Pack, Brake Pedal Switch, Fuel Pump Relay, AC Pressure Switch, Neutral Switch (1.5L), Canister Vent valve (1.3T), EVP Relay (1.5L)
F9	20A	Fuel Pump Relay
F10	10A	Right Headlamp Assembly
F11	10A	Left Headlamp Assembly
F12	30A	Ignition Coil, Engine Control Module
F13	15A	Horn Relay

No.	Specs	Function
F14	-	-
F15	10A	Intake Variable Camshaft Timing, Exhaust Variable Camshaft Timing, Canister Purge Valve (1.5L), Oil Control valve (1.3T)
F16	15A	Rear Wiper Relay
F17	10A	Fog Lamp Relay
F18	5A	Airbag ECU (SDM)
F19	5A	Instrument Pack, Front Detect Radar, Front View Control Module, Shifter Mechanism, Reverse Lamp Switch, Airbag Display Module
F20	5A	Engine Control Module
F21	25A	Body Control Module
F22 -F24	-	-
F25	30A	Body Control Module
F26	-	-
F27	15A	Body Control Module
F28	-	-
F29	-	-
F30	5A	Engine Control Module, Transmission Control Module-CVT

Bulb Replacement

Bulb Specification

Lamp Bulb	Specifications
Headlamp High/Low Beam	LED
Front Direction Indicators	LED
Daytime Running Lamps	LED
Front Side Light	LED
Front Fog Lamps *	H8 35W
Reverse Lamps	W16W 16W
Rear Direction Indicators	WY16W 16W
Rear Side Light (high configuration)	LED
Stop Lamps (high configuration)	LED
Rear Side Light (low configuration)	W5W 5W
Stop Lamps/ Rear Side Light (low configuration)	W21/5W 21/5W
License Plate Lamps	W5W 5W
Rear Fog Lamps	LED

High Mounted Stop Lamp	LED
Interior Lamp	LED
Load Space Lamp	C10W 10W

Bulb Replacement

Before replacing any bulb, turn off the START/ STOP Switch and lighting switch to avoid any possibility of a short circuit.

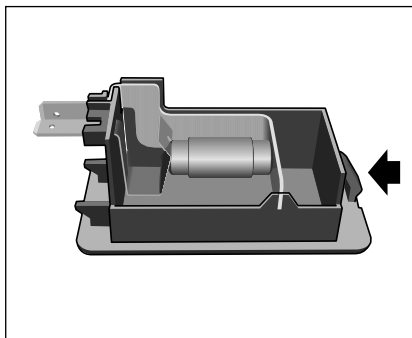
Note: MG only recommends replacement bulbs that completely meet the manufacturers specifications.

Take care NOT to touch the glass with your fingers; always use a cloth to handle the bulb. If necessary, clean the glass with methylated spirits to remove fingerprints.

If in doubt, when replacing bulbs, contact an MG Authorised Repairer.

For replacement of other bulbs not listed please consult an MG Authorised Repairer.

Load Space Lamp Bulb Renewal



- 1 Insert a suitable tool or small flat bladed screwdriver into the indent on one of the narrow sides (as arrowed in figure) of the lens and carefully remove the unit from its location.
- 2 Push while rotating the bulb to remove it.

The bulb refit procedure is in reverse order with the bulb removal procedure.

Maintenance

Maintenance	178
Bonnet	181
Engine Compartment.....	182
Engine	184
Cooling System.....	186
Brake	187
Battery	188
Washers	189
Wipers.....	190
Tyres	192
Cleaning and Vehicle Care.....	195

Maintenance

Routine Maintenance

The safety, reliability and performance of your car will depend partly on how well it is maintained. You must ensure that maintenance is carried out when required and according to the information contained in the 'Service Schedule'.

Servicing

For next service information, please refer to "Message Centre" in "Instruments and Controls" chapter or information related to entertainment system. After the completion of each service, the next service display will be reset by your MG Authorised Repairer.

Note: If a service is not carried out (or the display is not reset by the local MG Authorised Repairer after service), the service display cannot provide correct information.

Service History

Ensure your local MG Authorised Repairer fills in the Service Records after each service.

Brake Fluid Replacement

Replace the brake fluid according to the information contained in the "Service Schedule".

Note: Brake fluid replacement will be an additional cost.

Coolant Replacement

Replace the engine coolant (mixed solution of antifreeze and water) according to the information contained in the "Service Schedule".

Note: Coolant replacement will be an additional cost.


Emission Control

Your car is fitted with emission and evaporative control equipment designed to meet specific territorial and legal requirements. Incorrect engine settings may adversely affect exhaust emissions, engine performance and fuel consumption, as well as causing high temperatures, which could result in damage to the catalytic converters and engine.

IMPORTANT

You should be aware that unauthorised replacement, modification or tampering with this equipment by an owner or motor vehicle repairer could result in the manufacturer's warranty being deemed as invalid. In addition, engine settings must not be tampered with.

Owner Maintenance

 **Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported without delay. For further information, refer to an MG Authorised Repairer.**

In addition to the routine services referred to previously, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently. You can carry out these checks yourself and advice is given on the pages that follow.

Daily Checks

- Operation of lights, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers and warning lights.
- Operation of seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the car that might indicate a leak.
- Check tyre appearance.

Weekly Check

- Engine oil level.
- Coolant level.
- Brake fluid level.


- Windscreen washer fluid level.
- Operate air conditioning.

Note: *The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the car is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.*

Special Operating Conditions

If your car is frequently used in dusty conditions, or operated in extreme climates where sub-zero or very high ambient temperatures are normal, more frequent attention may need to be paid to servicing requirements. You need to carry out special maintenance operations (refer to Service Portfolio or contact your MG Authorised Repairer).

Safety in the Garage

 **Cooling fans may commence operating after the engine is switched off, and continue operating for a number of minutes. Keep clear of all fans while working in the engine compartment.**

If you need to carry out maintenance, observe the following safety precautions at all times:

- Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts and pulleys.
- If the car has been driven recently, **DO NOT TOUCH** exhaust and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.
- **DO NOT TOUCH** electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the ignition switch on.
- **NEVER** leave the engine running in an unventilated area - exhaust gases are poisonous and extremely dangerous.
- **DO NOT** work underneath the car with a wheel changing jack as the only means of support.
- Ensure that sparks and naked lights are far away from the engine compartment.

Maintenance

- Wear protective clothing and work gloves.
- Remove watches and jewelry before working in the engine compartment.
- DO NOT allow tools or metal parts of the car to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.

Toxic Liquid

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds. These include: battery acid, coolant, brake fluid, power steering fluid, fuel, engine oil and windscreen washer additives.

For your own safety, ALWAYS read and observe all instructions printed on labels and containers.

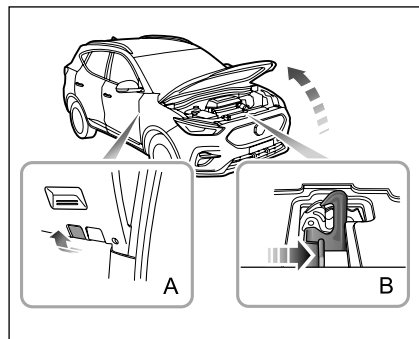
Used Engine Oil

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Wash thoroughly after contact. Used engine oil should be disposed of correctly. Incorrect disposal can cause a threat to the environment.

Bonnet

Opening the Bonnet

! ***DO NOT drive when the bonnet is not closed or retained only by the safety catch.***



- 1 From the inside of the vehicle, pull the bonnet release handle (Figure A).
- 2 Move the safety catch release handle on the bonnet lock assembly in the direction of the arrow (Figure B) to release the bonnet safety catch.
- 3 Raise the bonnet and hold it up with the support rod firmly.

Closing the Bonnet

Support the bonnet by one hand, release the support rod using the other hand, and place it firmly into the support rod base. Then hold the bonnet using both hands and lower it, allowing it to drop for the last 20 cm ~ 30 cm to fully close the bonnet.

By attempting to lift the front edge of the bonnet, check if the lock is fully engaged after closing the bonnet. If it is not fully engaged, you must repeat the operation.

Bonnet Open Warning

If the bonnet is not fully engaged, when the vehicle power system is in the ON/RUNNING position, the corresponding alarm icon will be displayed in the information message centre of the instrument pack. If it is detected that the bonnet is not fully engaged whilst driving, an audible warning will sound.

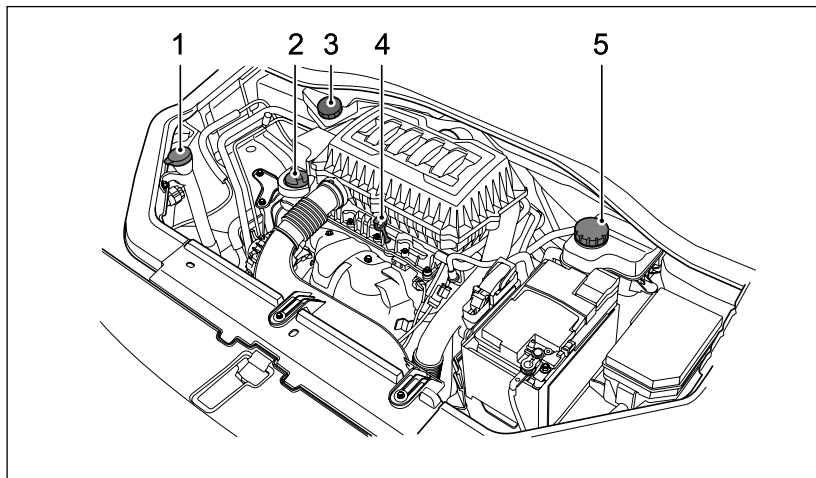
IMPORTANT

- For safety reasons, the bonnet should be fully latched and secure when driving. Therefore every time the bonnet is opened, you must check after closing that the bonnet is securely latched, e.g. the bonnet edge is flush with the body of the car.
- You should stop the car immediately when safety permits and close the bonnet if it is not closed fully when driving.
- Ensure the bonnet is supported manually when removing the bonnet support rod, failure to support the panel will result in the panel falling down causing injury or vehicle damage.
- Beware of injury to hands while fully closing the bonnet with a downward force.

Engine Compartment

1.5L Engine Compartment

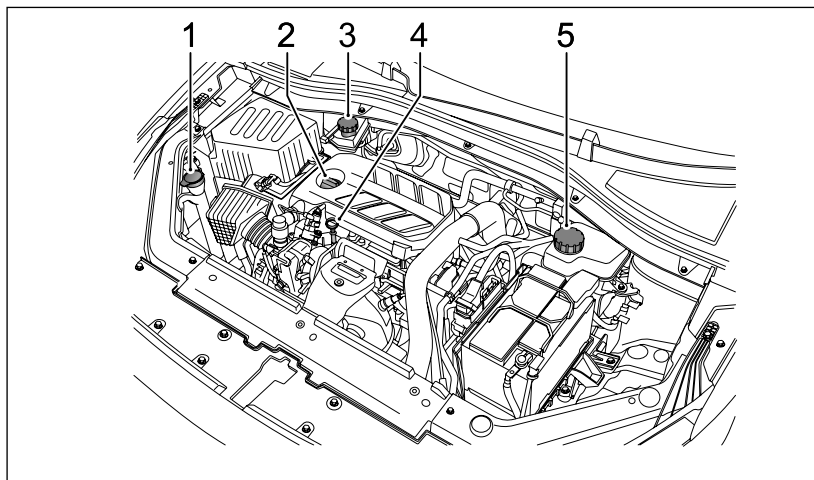
! While working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety precautions listed under 'Safety in the Garage', refer to 'Maintenance' in 'Maintenance' section.



- 1 Washer fluid reservoir (blue cap)
- 2 Engine oil filler cap (black cap)
- 3 Brake fluid reservoir (yellow/black cap)
- 4 Engine oil dipstick (yellow)
- 5 Coolant reservoir (black cap)

I.3L Turbocharged Engine Compartment

! While working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety precautions listed under 'Safety in the Garage', refer to 'Maintenance' in 'Maintenance' section.



- 1 Washer fluid reservoir (blue cap)
- 2 Engine oil filler cap (black cap)
- 3 Brake fluid reservoir (yellow/black cap)
- 4 Engine oil dipstick (yellow)
- 5 Coolant reservoir (black cap)

Engine

Engine Oil

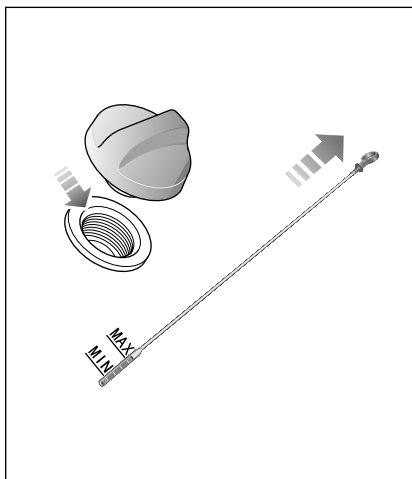
ACEA Classification of Engine Oils

European Automobile Manufacturers Association (ACEA) will classify the engine oils based on performance and quality. To ensure the best performance of the vehicle, please only use engine oils that are recommended by the manufacturer (see "Technical Data" - 'Recommended Fluids and Capacities'.

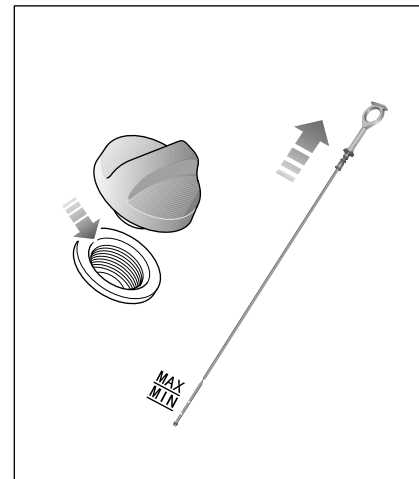
If you are operating the vehicle in extreme temperature conditions please consult your MG Authorised Repairer for advice.

Engine Oil Level Check and Top Up

! *Driving the vehicle with the engine oil level ABOVE the upper mark, or BELOW the lower mark on the dipstick, will damage the engine. Take care to avoid spilling engine oil onto a hot engine – a fire may result!*



1.3L Turbocharged Engine



1.5L Engine

Check the oil level weekly and top up with oil when necessary. Ideally, the oil level should be checked with the engine cold and the car resting on level ground. However, if the engine is running and already getting warm, wait for at least five minutes after switching off the START/STOP Switch before checking the level.

- 1 Withdraw the dipstick and wipe off the oil on it.
- 2 Slowly insert the oil dipstick and pull it out again to check the oil level; the oil level shall not be lower than the "MIN" mark on the oil dipstick.
- 3 Screw off the oil filler cap and refill the oil to maintain the oil level between the "MAX" mark and "MIN" mark on the oil dipstick.
- 4 Wait for 5 minutes and then recheck the oil level, add an appropriate amount of oil if necessary – DO NOT OVERFILL!
- 5 Finally, ensure the dipstick is inserted and oil filler cap is fully secured.

Engine Oil Specification

Use the engine oil recommended and certified by the manufacturer. Refer to "Recommended Fluids and Capacities" in "Technical Data" section.

Note: Do not use the oil additives not applicable to the car, or else the engine may be damaged. You are recommended to use the oil additives certified by the manufacturer, please consult your local Authorised Repairer for details.

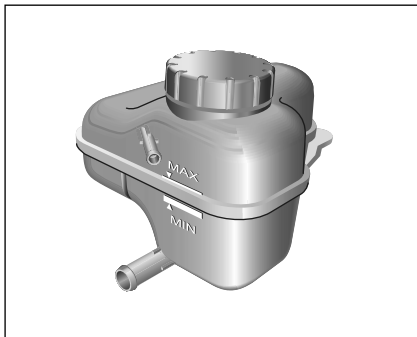
IMPORTANT

Check the engine oil level more frequently if the vehicle is driven at high speed for prolonged periods.

Cooling System

Coolant Check and Top Up

! **DO NOT** remove the coolant pressure cap when the cooling system is hot - escaping steam or hot coolant could cause serious injury.



The cooling system should be checked weekly when the cooling system is cold and with the car resting on level ground. If the coolant level is below the “MIN” mark, open the coolant expansion tank cap and top up coolant. The coolant level should not be higher than the “MAX” mark.

Note: Prevent coolant from coming into contact with the vehicle body when topping up. Coolant will damage paint.

If the coolant level falls appreciably during a short period, and you suspect that there may be a leak, please seek an Authorised Repairer for service.

Coolant Specification

Please use the coolant which is recommended and certified. Please refer to ‘Recommended Fluids and Capacities’ in the “Technical Data” section.

Note: The addition of corrosion inhibitors or other additives to the cooling system of this car may severely disrupt the efficiency of the system and cause parts damage. For cooling system issues please consult an Authorised Repairer.

! Coolant is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed - keep coolant containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental contact of coolant by children is suspected, seek medical assistance immediately.

! Prevent the coolant from coming into contact with the skin or eyes. If this occurs, rinse immediately with plenty of water. If eyes are still red, painful or uncomfortable, seek medical

Brake

Brake Pads

! **DO NOT rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving; this may overheat the brakes, reduce their efficiency and cause excessive wear.**

Reasonable usage range of brake friction pair:

Brake Pads		Larger than 2 mm
Front Brake Disc		20 ~ 22 mm
Rear Brake Disc	EPB Model	8 ~ 10 mm
	Non EPB Model	7 ~ 9 mm

For the first 1500 km, you should avoid situations where heavy braking is required.

Remember that regular servicing is vital to ensure that all the brake components are examined for wear at the correct intervals, and replaced when required to ensure long term safety and optimum performance during the interval prescribed in Service Portfolio.

The car needs to run in for 800 km after the brake pad or disc is replaced.

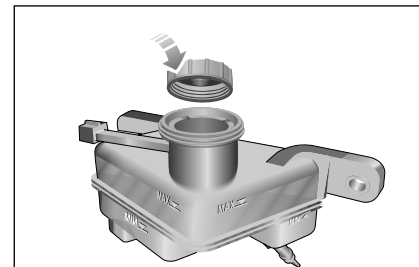
Brake Fluid Check and Top Up

! **Brake fluid is highly toxic, keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental contact of brake fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

! **Prevent brake fluid coming into contact with the skin or eyes. If this occurs, rinse immediately with plenty of water. If eyes are still red, painful or uncomfortable, seek medical attention immediately.**

The brake fluid level should be checked weekly when the system is cold and with the car on level ground. The brake fluid level can be seen through the reservoir and should be maintained between the “MAX” and “MIN” marks.

Note: Do not allow the brake fluid level to drop below the “MIN” mark or rise above the “MAX” mark.



Note: Brake fluid will damage painted surfaces. If you accidentally spill the brake fluid on the painted surface, soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with water or car shampoo.

Brake Fluid Specification

Use the brake fluid recommended and approved by the manufacturer. Refer to “Recommended Fluids and Capacities” in the “Technical Data” section.

IMPORTANT

Replace brake fluid regularly according to the Service Portfolio.

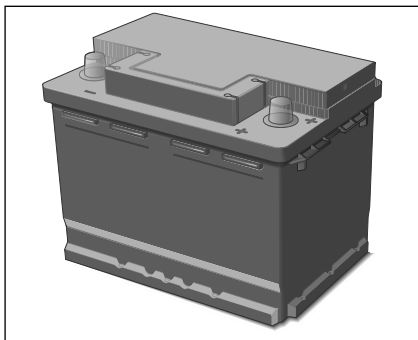
Battery

Battery Maintenance

! *DO NOT leave electric components switched on when the vehicle is not in READY mode, otherwise the battery may become flat, resulting in the failure to start the vehicle and the reduction of battery life.*

! *Always store batteries upright, tilting may allow the corrosive substances contained within the battery to leak out.*

! *Never attempt to dismantle a battery, they are sealed units.*



The battery is located in the front compartment and is maintenance-free, therefore there is no need to refill fluid.

For different battery types equipped, on the top of some batteries there is a battery condition indicator. Examine the indicator periodically to check the battery's condition.

When the indicator shows:

- GREEN - the battery is in a good state of charge.
- DARK (turning to black) - the battery needs charging.
- CLEAR (or light yellow) - the battery must be replaced.


Note: *Please ensure a clear view of the condition indicator. Use a torch if natural light is poor.*

Note: *It is recommended to start the vehicle for half an hour every week to help extend the service life of the battery. If the vehicle is stored for more than 1 month, remove the negative terminal from the battery. Make sure that the vehicle power system has been turned off before connecting or disconnecting the negative terminal.*

Battery Replacement

! *The battery contains sulphuric acid, which is corrosive.*

The battery contains sulphuric acid, which is corrosive. Please go to an MG Authorised Repairer to remove and install the battery. Only fit a replacement battery of the same type and specification as the original to maintain the correct vehicle functionality.

 The battery must be disposed of using an approved method, used batteries can be harmful to the environment. It should be recycled by a professional company. Please consult an MG Authorised Repairer for more details.

Washers

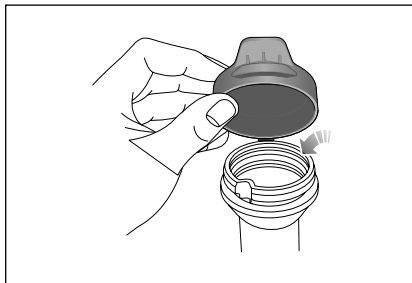
Windscreen Washer Check and Top Up

! Windscreen washer fluid is flammable. **DO NOT** allow windscreen washer fluid to come into contact with naked flames or sources of ignition.

! When filling the washer fluid, **DO NOT** let the washer fluid spill on parts in the compartment or on the paint surface of vehicle body. In case the washer fluid is spilled on hands or other parts of the body, please immediately wash with clean water.

Check the washer fluid level regularly. When the level of washer fluid is low, please top up the washer fluid as instructed. Use the washer fluid recommended and certified by the manufacturer. Refer to 'Recommended Fluids and Capacities'.

Note: DO NOT use anti-freeze or vinegar/ water solution in the washer reservoir - anti-freeze will damage paintwork while vinegar will damage the washer pump.



IMPORTANT

- Use the washer fluid recommended and certified by the manufacturer. Misuse of washer fluid in winter may cause damage to the washer pump due to freezing.
- Using the washers when there is no washer fluid may cause damage to the washer pump.
- Operating the wipers when the windshields are dry and there is no washer fluid may cause damage to the windshields and wipers. Please spray the washer fluid and start the wipers when there is adequate washer fluid.

Washer Nozzles

Operate the washers periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

If the nozzle is obstructed, insert a needle or thin metal wire into the hole to remove the obstruction.

Wipers

Wiper Blades

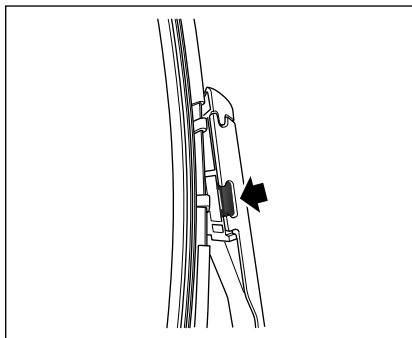
IMPORTANT

- Grease, silicon and petrol based products impair the blade's wiping capability. Wash the wiper blades in warm soapy water and periodically check their condition.
- Clean the windscreen frequently, DO NOT use wipers to remove stubborn or ingrained dirt, it will reduce their effect and their life span.
- If signs of hardness or cracking in the rubber are found, or if the wipers leave streaks or unwiped areas on the screen, then the wiper blades should be replaced.
- Clean the windscreen regularly with an approved glass cleaner and ensure the screen is thoroughly cleaned before fitting replacement wiper blades.
- Only fit replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.

IMPORTANT

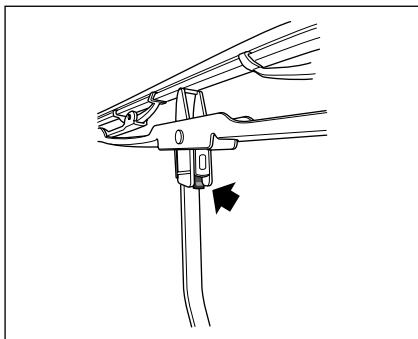
- Clean ice and snow from around wipers and ensure they are not frozen or otherwise sticking to the windscreen before attempting to operate them.

Replacing Front Wiper Blades (Without frame) *



- 1 With the bonnet closed, and within 20 seconds of switching the START/STOP Switch to the OFF position, operate the wiper stalk switch by pressing down and releasing, the wipers will sweep and stop in the 'service position' on the windscreen.
- 2 Lift the wiper arm away from the windscreen.
- 3 Press the retaining clips at both sides (as shown in the figure), whilst pulling the wiper blade outward, to remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm and discard.
- 4 Position the fitting of the new wiper blade into the slot of the wiper arm.
- 5 Push the wiper blade towards the wiper arm until it is located embedded with a click been heard.
- 6 Place the wiper assembly back on the windscreen.
- 7 To exit the service mode and return the wipers to the park position, operate the wiper stalk switch again by pressing down and releasing, alternatively, turn on the START/STOP Switch.

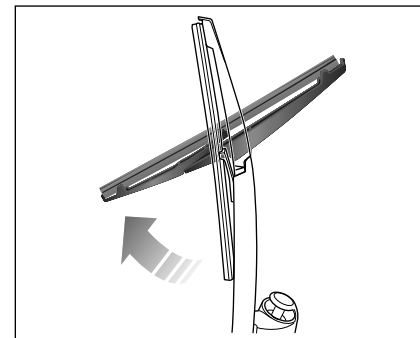
Replacing Front Wiper Blades (With frame) *



- 1 With the bonnet closed, and within 20 seconds of switching the START/STOP Switch to the OFF position, operate the wiper stalk switch by pressing down and releasing, the wipers will sweep and stop in the 'service position' on the windscreen.
- 2 Lift the wiper arm away from the windscreen.

- 3 Rotate the wiper blade and press the retaining clip (as shown in the figure), meanwhile pull the wiper blade downward, to remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm and discard.
- 4 Put the fitting on new wiper blade into the U slot of the wiper arm.
- 5 Push the wiper blade upward until the it is fully embedded with a click been heard.
- 6 Place the wiper assembly back on the windscreen.
- 7 To exit the service mode and return the wipers to the park position, operate the wiper stalk switch again by pressing down and releasing, alternatively, turn on the START/STOP Switch.

Replacing Rear Wiper Blades



- 1 Lift the wiper arm away from the rear window.
- 2 Rotate the wiper blade as shown in the figure, to remove it from the wiper arm and discard.
- 3 Position the fitting of the new wiper blade into the slot of the wiper arm. Ensure the wiper blade is properly secured on the wiper arm.
- 4 Place the wiper assembly back on the rear window.

Tyres

Overview

- Take extra care when using new tyres for the first 500 kilometres.
- Avoid excessive cornering at speed.
- Slow down when passing through road shoulder or a similar section, and allow the wheels to go through the shoulder at the right angle as far as possible.
- Regularly check the damage of tyres (stabs, scratches, cracks and pits) and remove any foreign objects from the tread.
- Prevent the tyre from contacting oil, grease and fuel.
- Ensure valve caps are always fitted.
- If the tyre is to be removed always mark the tyre/wheel orientation to ensure correct reinstallation.
- The wheels or tyres that have been disassembled should be kept in a cool, dry and light-free place.

New Tyres

New tyres may not have the best adhesive ability at the beginning. Therefore, driving your vehicle at moderate speed and in a prudent way at the first 500 kilometres, which is also beneficial to the service life of the tyres.

The damage of tyre or rim may happen unnoticed. If abnormal vibration or handling is experienced, that means the tyre or rim may have been damaged. Please slow down and park your vehicle in absolute safety, then check the tyre and rim. If you can't see the damage from the outside, you should continue to drive with low speed and go to the nearest MG Authorised Repairer for inspection.

Directional Tyres

Directional tyres are marked with 'direction of rotation' (DOR). To maintain handling characteristics, tyre performance, low road noise and extend tyre life, tyres must always be fitted with indication arrow showing the correct 'DOR'.

Tyre Life

Correct tyre pressure and moderate driving style can extend tyre life.

Recommendations:

- If the vehicle is to be stored for a lengthy time, please move your vehicle at least once in two weeks to 'rotate the tyres'.
- Check the pressure of tyres regularly when they are cold.
- Avoid cornering at excessive speed.
- Regularly check tyres for abnormal wear patterns.

These following factors may affect the tyre life.

Tyre Pressure

Incorrect pressure will cause the abnormal wear of the tyre, greatly shorten the service life, and have an adverse effect on the driving characteristics of the vehicle. Tyre pressure should be checked at least once a month, and once prior to each long-distance journey.

Driving Style

Excessively harsh acceleration and braking (you may hear a piercing noise) or driving at high speed whilst cornering will increase the wear of tyre.

Wheel Balance


The working balance of auto-wheels is well tested before a new vehicle comes out of the factory. But the wheels may be out of balance due to many factors.

If wheels are out of balance, shaking or vibration of the steering mechanism may occur and the tyres may be excessively worn. It is important to rectify this quickly. Each wheel should be rebalanced after installing a new tyre or having the tyre repair.

Wheel Alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment can cause excessive tyre wear and affect vehicle safety. If the tyres show signs of abnormal wear, seek advice from an MG Authorised Repairer.


Caring for Your Tyres

 **DEFECTIVE TYRES ARE DANGEROUS! DO NOT drive if any tyre is damaged, is excessively worn, or is inflated to an incorrect pressure.**

Always drive with consideration for the condition of the tyres, and regularly inspect the tread and side walls for any sign of distortion (bulges), cuts or wear.

Note: If possible, protect tyres from contamination by oil, grease and fuel.

Tyre Pressure

 **Before a long distance journey, the tyre pressure must be checked.**

Check the pressure (including the spare wheel) at least once a month, when the tyres are cold.

If it is necessary to check the tyre pressure when they are warm, you should expect the pressure to have increased by 0.3 to 0.4 bar (4.35 to 5.8 psi). In this circumstance, NEVER let air out of the tyres in order to match the recommended pressure (cold).

Valves

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly - they prevent dirt from entering the valve. Check the valve for leaks (listen for a tell-tale hissing) when you check the tyre pressure.

Punctured Tyres

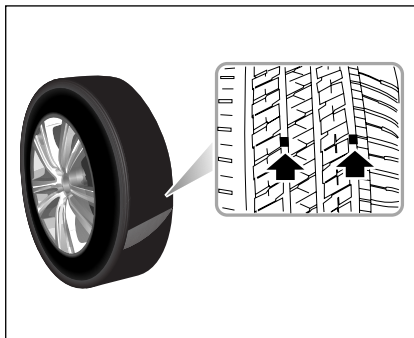
If a sharp object penetrates the tyre and remains in it, the tyre may not leak. If you are aware of this occurring, reduce speed immediately and drive with caution until the spare wheel can be fitted, or repairs undertaken.

Note: *If the sidewall of the tyre is damaged or distorted, replace the tyre immediately, do not attempt a repair.*

Tyre Wear Indicators

At the bottom of the original tyre, there is a 1.6 millimeter high wear mark perpendicular to the wheel rolling direction. These indicators moulded into the tread pattern at several points around the circumference. A mark on the side of a tyre, such as the upper case letter TWI or the triangle, indicating the position of the wear mark.

When the tread has worn down to 1.6 millimeter, the indicators will come to the surface of the tread pattern, producing the effect of a continuous band of rubber across the width of the tyre.



IMPORTANT

A tyre **MUST** be replaced as soon as a wear indicator becomes visible.

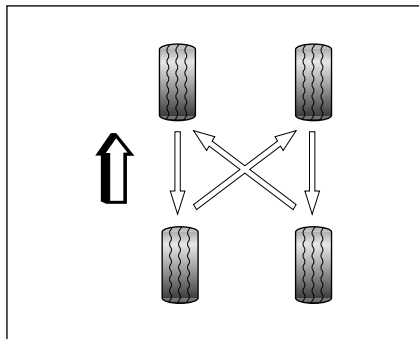
Replacement Tyres

! *It is recommended to install the tyres consistent with the original specifications. DO NOT replace the tyres with tyres of any other type. Alternative tyres, of a different specification, may adversely affect the vehicle's driving characteristics and safety. In order to make your driving and safety better guarantee, it is suggested that you consult an MG Authorised Repairer.*

Always have replacement wheels and tyres balanced before use.

Wheel Fitment Rotation

It is not recommended that you swap wheels from side to side or front to rear in order to equalise tyre wear. Your vehicle is fitted with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System which means that each wheel is programmed to the relative position.



If you do wish to swap wheels and tyres around on the vehicle please consult an MG Authorised Repairer as extra coding will be required.

Cleaning and Vehicle Care

Observe all safety precautions on cleaning products; do not drink fluids and keep them away from the eyes.

External Car

Washing Your Car

Some high pressure cleaning systems will penetrate door, window and sunroof seals, and damage lock mechanisms. DO NOT aim water jets directly at components that might be easily damaged.

Do not clean the engine compartment with high pressure water since it may damage the electrical system of the vehicle.

In order to preserve the paint finish on your car, please observe the following care points:

- DO NOT use hot water to wash the car.
- DO NOT use detergents or washing up liquid.
- In hot weather, DO NOT wash the car in direct sunlight.

- When using a hose, DO NOT aim the water directly at window, door or sunroof seals, or through wheel apertures onto the brake components.

If the car is particularly dirty, use a hose to flush grime and grit from the bodywork, prior to washing. Then, wash the car using cold or lukewarm water containing a good quality wash and wax shampoo. Always use plenty of water to ensure that grit is flushed from the surface and not ground into the paintwork. After washing, rinse the bodywork with clean water and dry off with a chamois leather.

Cleaning the underside

Note: DO NOT use a high pressure hose to clean the engine compartment – damage to the car's electronic systems may occur.

From time to time, but particularly during winter months when salt has been used on the roads, use a hose to wash the underside of the car. Flush away accumulations of mud and thoroughly clean those areas where debris can easily collect (wheel arches and panel seams, for example).

IMPORTANT

- Avoid cleaning the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- When cleaning the vehicle in winter avoid spraying water directly onto door locks and panel gaps due to risk of icing.
- Do not use rough sponges or cloth to clean the car, this will damage the paintwork finish.
- When cleaning the headlamps do not use a dry cloth or sponge, use only warm soapy water.

Cleaning with a High Pressure Cleaner

Note: Always read the manufacturers operating instructions.

When using high pressure washers, always ensure there is adequate distance between the spray nozzle and any soft materials, decals or rubber seals.

IMPORTANT

- Please pay attention to the operating instructions of high pressure cleaner.
- Soft parts on the vehicle should be kept in a large enough distance from the high pressure cleaner.

Removing tar spots

Use white spirit to remove tar spots and stubborn grease stains from the paintwork. Then wash the area immediately with soapy water to remove all traces of the spirit.

Body Protection

After washing, examine the paintwork for damage. If the damage has revealed bare metal, use a colored primer first, then apply the correct colour base coat and finish off with a lacquer pencil, if appropriate. Carry out this treatment after washing but before polishing or waxing. More extensive damage to paint or bodywork must be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Failure to do this will invalidate the Anti-Corrosion Warranty. If in doubt, ask your MG Authorised Repairer.

Polishing the Paintwork

DO NOT use car polish containing coarse abrasives – these will remove the paint film and damage the gloss finish.

Occasionally treat the paint surface with an approved polish containing the following properties:

- Very mild abrasives to remove surface contamination without removing or damaging the paint.
- Filling compounds that will fill scratches and reduce their visibility.
- Wax to provide a protective coating between the paint and the elements.

Note: If possible, avoid applying polish or wax products to window glass and rubber seals.

Wiper Blades

Wash in warm soapy water. DO NOT use spirit or petrol based cleaners.

Windows and Mirrors

Regularly clean all windows, inside and out, using an approved glass cleaner.

Windscreen: In particular, clean the outside of the screen with glass cleaner after washing the car with wash and wax products, and before fitting new wiper blades.

Rear screen: Clean the inside with a soft cloth, using a side to side motion to avoid damaging the heating elements.

Note: *DO NOT scrape or use abrasive cleaners on the inside of the rear screen – this will damage the heating elements.*

Mirrors: Wash with soapy water. Use a plastic scraper to remove ice. DO NOT use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scraper.

Plastic Components

Any plastic components should be cleaned using conventional cleaning methods and not be treated with abrasive materials.

Paint Damage

Any paint damage or stonechips should be treated with suitable paint/lacquer materials immediately to avoid invalidating the Anti Corrosion Warranty.

Weather Strips and Rubber Seals

Any weather strips or rubber aperture seals should be treated with suitable materials (silica gel) if they are cleaned using strong detergents, this should avoid any sticking and maintain the service life of the seal.

Wheels



When cleaning the wheels any materials or water that contact the brake disc directly may effect braking efficiency.

In order to ensure the wheels are kept in optimum condition they should be cleaned regularly.

Only use a recommended non-acidic propriety wheel cleaner. Always read the instructions on the product.

Cleaning the Interior

Plastic materials

Clean plastic-faced materials with diluted upholstery cleaner, then wipe with a damp cloth.

Note: *DO NOT polish dashboard components – these should remain non-reflective.*

Carpet and fabrics

Clean with diluted upholstery cleaner - test a concealed area first.

Leather


Clean leather trim with warm water and a non-detergent soap. Dry and polish the leather with a dry, clean, lint-free cloth.

Note: *DO NOT use petrol, detergents, furniture creams or polishes as cleaning agents.*

Instrument Pack, Audio and Navigation Display

Clean with a dry cloth only. DO NOT use cleaning fluids or sprays.


Airbag Module Covers

 **DO NOT allow these areas to be flooded with liquid and DO NOT use petrol, detergent, furniture cream or polishes.**

To protect damage to the airbag SRS, the following areas should be cleaned sparingly with a damp cloth and upholstery cleaner ONLY:

- Steering wheel centre pad.
- Area of dashboard containing the passenger airbag.
- Area of roof lining and front pillar finishers which enclose the side head impact protection modules.

Seat Belts

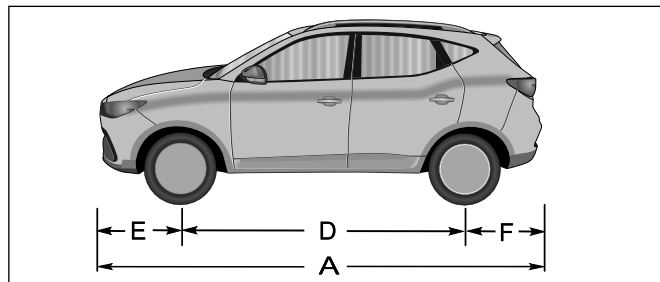
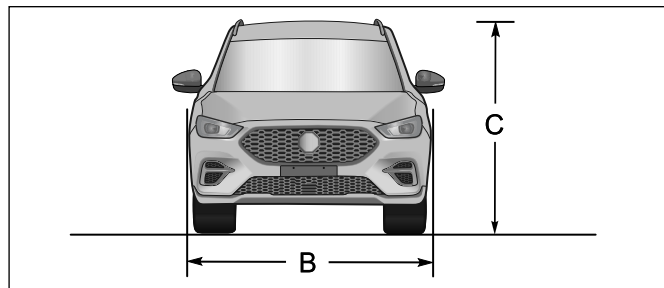
 **DO NOT use bleaches, dyes or cleaning solvents on seat belts.**

Extend the belts, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the belts to dry naturally; DO NOT retract them or use the car until they are completely dry.

Technical Data

Technical Data Dimensions	200
Weights	202
Major Parameters of Engine	204
Recommended Fluids and Capacities	206
Wheel Alignment (Unladen).....	207
Wheels and Tyres.....	207
Tyre Pressure (Cold)	208

Technical Data Dimensions



Item, Units	Item, Units Parameter
Overall length A, mm	4323
Overall width B, mm	1809
Overall height C (unladen), mm	1628(excluding luggage rack)/1650(including luggage rack)
Wheelbase D, mm	2585
Front Overhang E, mm	901
Rear Overhang F, mm	837
Front wheel track, mm	1526
Rear wheel track, mm	1536

Item, Units	Item, Units Parameter
Minimum ground clearance (laden), mm	MT- 181 CVT-152 AT-141
Minimum turning circle diameter, m	11.2
Fuel tank capacity, l	45/48

Note: *Vehicle length not including the license plate.*

Note: *Rearview mirrors and the deformed portion of tyre wall directly above the touchdown point are not included in the total width.*

Weights

Item, Units	Parameter
	1.5L MT
Person in cab, person	5
Unladen vehicle weight (kerb), kg	LV0-1245/LV1-1263/LV2-1271/LV3-1303
Gross vehicle weight, kg	LV0-1678/LV1-1696/LV2-1703/LV3-1736
Unladen front axle weight, kg	LV0-740/LV1-752/LV2-755/LV3-771
Unladen rear axle weight, kg	LV0-505/LV1-511/LV2-516/LV3-532
Laden front axle weight, kg	LV0-847/LV1-859/LV2-862/LV3-878
Laden rear axle weight, kg	LV0-831/LV1-837/LV2-842/LV3-858

Item, Units	Parameter
	1.5L CVT
Person in cab, person	5
Unladen vehicle weight (kerb), kg	LV1-1301/LV2-1315/LV3-1349
Gross vehicle weight, kg	LV1-1733/LV2-1748/LV3-1780

Item, Units	Parameter
	I.5L CVT
Unladen front axle weight, kg	LVI-785/LV2-794/LV3-811
Unladen rear axle weight, kg	LVI-516/LV2-521/LV3-538
Laden front axle weight, kg	LVI-892/LV2-901/LV3-917
Laden rear axle weight, kg	LVI-841/LV2-847/LV3-863

Item, Units	Parameter
	I.3T 6AT
Person in cab, person	5
Unladen vehicle weight (kerb), kg	LVI-1317/LV2-1324/LV3-1355
Gross vehicle weight, kg	LVI-1750/LV2-1756/LV3-1788
Unladen front axle weight, kg	LVI-796/LV2-799/LV3-814
Unladen rear axle weight, kg	LVI-521/LV2-525/LV3-541
Laden front axle weight, kg	LVI-903/LV2-905/LV3-921
Laden rear axle weight, kg	LVI-847/LV2-851/LV3-867

Major Parameters of Engine

Vehicle	Parameter
	1.5L
Bore × Stroke, mm × mm	75×84.8
Capacity, Litres	1.498
Compression ratio	11.5:1
Fuel type	INDIA 91 unleaded gasoline and above
Emission Standard	BS6

Major Parameters of Engine

Vehicle	Parameter
	I.3T
Bore × Stroke, mm × mm	80×89.4
Capacity, Litres	1.349
Compression ratio	10:1
Fuel type	INDIA 91 unleaded gasoline and above
Emission Standard	BS6

Recommended Fluids and Capacities

Name	Grade	Grade			
		I.5L-5P17	I.5L-MS35	I.5L-CVT	I.3T-6AT
Engine oil (after-sales replacement), L	C2 5W-30	4.1			4.6
Engine coolant, L	Glycol (OAT)	5.4			6.4
Automatic transmission oil, L	AW-I	—			6.2
Continuously variable automatic transmission oil, L	Shell SL-2100	—		6.96	—
Manual transmission oil, L	Castrol BOT503	1.7	1.8	—	
Brake fluid, L	DOT 4	0.85			
Washer fluid, L	ZY-VIII	4			
Air conditioning refrigerant, g	R-134a	540±20			

Wheel Alignment (Unladen)

Item		Parameter
Front	Camber	-28'±45'
	Kingpin Castor	3°54'±45'
	Toe in (Total)	8'±15'
	Kingpin Inclination	11°49'±45'
Rear	Camber	-1°15'±45'
	Toe in (Total)	24'±20'

Wheels and Tyres

Wheel size	7J×17	6.5J×16
Tyre size	215/55 R17	215/60 R16

Technical Data

Spare Tyre

Wheel rim specification	6.5J×16
Spare tyre specification	215/60 R16

Tyre Pressure (Cold)

Wheels	Unladen
Front Wheels	220kPa/2.2Bar/32Psi
Rear Wheels	220kPa/2.2Bar/32Psi

Note: *It is recommended that the pressure of full size spare tyre should be consistent with that of main tyre.*

DELIVERY OF YOUR VEHICLE

Dealer Name..... Dealer Address.....

FIRST NAME SURNAME

MODEL.....

VEHICLE DELIVERED ON BY

PRESENTATION AND EXPLANATION

1 FRONT OF THE VEHICLE

Eg. Servicing details, Checking the levels

2 FRONT PASSENGER SIDE

Eg. Disconnecting the passenger airbag (to fit a child seat to the front seat)

3 REAR OF THE VEHICLE

Eg. Location of the spare wheel, tool kit

4 REAR SEATS

Eg. Child safety (Isofix fixing point) Modularity of the seats

» Was your vehicle presented to you as stated above?

☐ YES

☐ NO

» Did your vehicle match your vehicle order?

☐ YES

☐ NO

5 DRIVING POSITION

Eg. Adjusting the driving position. Use of the instrument panel and controls. Specific points relating to your vehicle.
Eg: Programming the radio, bluetooth, automatic illumination of the headlights, etc.

6 DEALER SERVICE DEPARTMENT

7 WARRANTY AND MAINTENANCE CONDITIONS

Eg. Warranty and maintenance documents (Service sheet or warranty & maintenance booklets), maintenance stamps

8 ISSUED WITH

- ☐ Two set of keys
- ☐ Tool kit
- ☐ Spare tyre
- ☐ Vehicle invoice
- ☐ Insurance cover note
- ☐ Registration document
- ☐ Vehicle manual

Delivery of your vehicle

Comments:

.....

.....

.....

Please note that MG Motor India will not be responsible for any issues pertaining to Non Genuine Accessories fitted either by dealership or aftermarket.

Should you require any further details regarding the vehicle handover or if you have any questions relating to your vehicle, please do not hesitate to contact your Sales or Delivery Advisor.

ENJOY DRIVING YOUR NEW MG!

CUSTOMER SIGNATURE

DELIVERY ADVISOR SIGNATURE

1st EXEMPLARY: CUSTOMER

2nd EXEMPLARY: DELIVERY ADVISOR

DELIVERY OF YOUR VEHICLE

Dealer Name..... Dealer Address.....

FIRST NAME SURNAME

MODEL.....

VEHICLE DELIVERED ON BY

PRESENTATION AND EXPLANATION

1 FRONT OF THE VEHICLE

Eg. Servicing details, Checking the levels

2 FRONT PASSENGER SIDE

Eg. Disconnecting the passenger airbag (to fit a child seat to the front seat)

3 REAR OF THE VEHICLE

Eg. Location of the spare wheel, tool kit

4 REAR SEATS

Eg. Child safety (Isofix fixing point) Modularity of the seats

» Was your vehicle presented to you as stated above?

☐ YES

☐ NO

» Did your vehicle match your vehicle order?

☐ YES

☐ NO

5 DRIVING POSITION

Eg. Adjusting the driving position. Use of the instrument panel and controls. Specific points relating to your vehicle.
Eg: Programming the radio, bluetooth, automatic illumination of the headlights, etc.

6 DEALER SERVICE DEPARTMENT

7 WARRANTY AND MAINTENANCE CONDITIONS

Eg. Warranty and maintenance documents (Service sheet or warranty & maintenance booklets), maintenance stamps

8 ISSUED WITH

- ☐ Two set of keys
- ☐ Tool kit
- ☐ Spare tyre
- ☐ Vehicle invoice
- ☐ Insurance cover note
- ☐ Registration document
- ☐ Vehicle manual

Delivery of your vehicle

Comments:

.....

.....

.....

Please note that MG Motor India will not be responsible for any issues pertaining to Non Genuine Accessories fitted either by dealership or aftermarket.

Should you require any further details regarding the vehicle handover or if you have any questions relating to your vehicle, please do not hesitate to contact your Sales or Delivery Advisor.

ENJOY DRIVING YOUR NEW MG!

CUSTOMER SIGNATURE

DELIVERY ADVISOR SIGNATURE

1st EXEMPLARY: CUSTOMER

2nd EXEMPLARY: DELIVERY ADVISOR

MG Motor New Vehicle Warranty

Terms & Conditions

INDIA

1. **Warning:**

Your MG MOTOR vehicle is manufactured to meet the regulations and environmental requirements for Indian conditions. In case you relocate it to any other country than INDIA, it may be very difficult to make modifications to comply with the regulations and environmental requirements of that country and it may be difficult to perform repair service in that country.

Please note that a MG MOTOR vehicle relocated to any other country than India shall not be covered by the warranty.

2. **The MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty**

2.1 Duration of MG MOTOR'S New Vehicle Warranty:

Vehicles in the MG MOTOR range, delivered as new from 1st April 2019 to the Customer by an authorized MG MOTOR DEALER, are warranted against any material, assembly or Manufacturing Defects by the Manufacturer. The New Vehicle shall be covered under a Warranty by MG MOTOR for a period of

- **Personal Registration** - 3 years or Unlimited kilometers (whichever is earlier)

- **Commercial Registration** - 3 years or 1,00,000 kms (whichever is earlier)

MG Motor new vehicle warranty starts from the Delivery Date shown in the Owner's Manual issued to the Customer / First Owner of the vehicle upon delivery of the vehicle purchased. (Transfer of ownership of the vehicle does not alter the warranty period of a vehicle.)

2.2 **Geographical coverage:**

2.2.1 This warranty covers any new vehicle sold within geographical boundaries of INDIA.

If the vehicle is to be driven and, more importantly, registered outside the geographical area defined above, such vehicle will not be covered under the current warranty as stated herein.

2.3 The period of warranty on the vehicle shall not be deemed to be extended by repairs or replacements of any parts.

2.4 In the event the Original Purchaser of the vehicle transfers the vehicle during the period of warranty, it shall be obligation of the subsequent purchaser to notify and inform MG Motor or its authorized dealer of such transfer.

2.5 If the vehicle identification number (VIN) of an insured vehicle is declared as total loss by the insurer, any Warranty, Extended Warranty, free services, i-call, e-call and i-smart app (facilities if applicable) provided

in respect of such vehicle shall become null and void with effect from the date VIN of such vehicle is declared as total loss by the insurer.

Field of Application:

2.5 The Customer is covered for:

- 2.5.1 Free repair (parts, consumables and labour) of any material or assembly defect duly found in the vehicle, at their own request, as well as any repairs on damage caused by this defect to other vehicle parts.
- 2.5.2 24/7 assistance services as defined in the "MG MOTOR Road Side Assistance" section.

It is the authorized MG MOTOR Dealer's discretion to decide whether it is appropriate to repair or replace the defective part, whilst keeping the Customer informed.

2.6 Parts not covered under warranty conditions contained herein:

The following are the parts not covered by warranty conditions contained herein. Hence, it is

requested to contact your nearest MG MOTOR Dealer for more details.

- 2.6.1 **Battery:** The warranty coverage for 12V / 48V Battery is valid for 1 year starting from the Delivery Date shown in the Owner's Manual issued to the Customer and shall be provided by the battery manufacturer as per their terms and conditions.

- 2.6.2 **Tyre:** The warranty coverage for Tyre is valid for 1 year starting from the Delivery Date shown in the Owner's Manual issued to the Customer and shall be provided by the respective tyre manufacturer as per their warranty terms and conditions.

- 2.6.3 **Infotainment / Audio system including T-Box:** The warranty coverage for Infotainment / Audio system is valid for 3 years from the Delivery Date shown in the Owner's Manual issued to the Customer and shall be provided by the respective manufacturer as per their terms and conditions.

2.7 The MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty does not cover and MG MOTOR India Private Limited (MG MOTOR) and / or MG MOTOR authorized workshop shall not be responsible for the following:

- 2.7.1 Normal maintenance services other than free services*, including without limitation, cleaning and polishing, minor adjustments, engine tuning, oil top-up / fluid changes, Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) top-up / replacement, filters replenishment, fastener re-tightening, wheel balancing, wheel alignment and tyre rotation etc.
- 2.7.2 The indirect and remote consequences of any fault (loss of operation, duration of immobilization, etc.);
- 2.7.3 Vehicle components which have undergone conversion work, and/or specification and design changes and the consequences (deterioration, premature wear and tear, alterations, etc.) of the conversion work on other vehicle parts or components, or on its specifications;

*The right is reserved to change number of free services at any time without prior notice.

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| <p>2.7.4 The costs incurred by the Customer for routine maintenance;</p> <p>2.7.5 Replacement of parts due to normal wear and tear resulting from use of the vehicle or from its mileage including but not limited to clutch, shocker absorbers, wiper blades, brake drum, brake disk, brake pads, brake shoe, lamp, plugs, belts, linings, bulbs, fuses, suspension parts, mountings, parts made of rubber, etc.</p> <p>Other parts, not limited to steering wheel, gear knobs, gear bellows prone to normal wear & tear will have a limited coverage**</p> <p>2.7.6 Damage or failure resulting due to the following causes:</p> <p>2.7.6.1 Poor vehicle maintenance, in particular if the instructions for the treatment, the frequency of maintenance or care to be applied to the vehicle set out in the Owner's Manual have not been observed;</p> <p>2.7.6.2 Due to lack of use / operation of vehicle over prolonged period[s];</p> | <p>2.7.6.3 Misuse, abuse, negligence, improper driving habits, theft etc. of the vehicle;</p> <p>2.7.6.4 Damage from stress, like use of vehicles in races, rallies or as taxis.</p> <p>2.7.6.5 Use of parts other than MG MOTOR Genuine Parts.</p> <p>2.7.6.6 Any device and / or accessories not Supplied / Fitted by MG MOTOR.</p> <p>2.7.6.7 Modifications, alterations, tampering or improper repair.</p> <p>2.7.6.8 Parts used in applications of which they were not designed or not approved by MG MOTOR.</p> <p>2.7.6.9 The vehicle in which the odometer has been tampered with, changed aftermarket or been disconnected.</p> <p>2.7.6.10 Slight irregularities not recognized as affecting quality or function of the vehicle or parts, such as slight noise or vibrations, or items considered characteristic of the vehicle.</p> <p>2.7.7 Damage caused by the following external causes:</p> | <p>2.7.7.1 Accidents, impacts, scratches, scoring, projection of gravel or solid bodies, hail, acts of vandalism;</p> <p>2.7.7.2 Failure to observe the Manufacturer recommendations;</p> <p>2.7.7.3 Deposits due to atmospheric pollution, plant-based deposits such as resin, animal-based deposits such as bird droppings, chemical deposits;</p> <p>2.7.7.4 Transportation of the vehicle;</p> <p>2.7.7.5 Using an adulterated / incorrect fuel;</p> <p>2.7.7.6 Fitting accessories not approved by the manufacturer;</p> <p>2.7.7.7 Fitting accessories approved by the manufacturer, but installed without observing the recommendations defined by the manufacturer;</p> <p>2.7.7.8 Damage due to airborne fallout, industrial fall out, acid rain, hail and wind storms, or other force majeure events like lightning, fire, floods, earthquakes, war, riots, attacks etc.;</p> <p>2.7.7.9 Damage caused due to hydro-static lock, submerged vehicle.</p> <p>2.7.7.10 Damage caused due to rodents;</p> |
|---|---|---|

2.7.7.11 Paint scratches, dents or similar paint or body damage.

2.7.7.12 Incidental or consequential damages, including without limitation, loss of time, inconvenience, loss of use of vehicle or commercial loss.

How does the MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty work?

2.8 To be eligible for the MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty, the Customer must:

2.8.1 check that the Owner's Manual does contain the Delivery Date of the vehicle - their warranty entitlement is dependent on this;

2.8.2 contact any workshop of the MG MOTOR Authorized Workshop Network – only such Workshop have the authorization for operations of this sort;

2.8.3 show the duly completed Owner's Manual, as proof of entitlement to the warranty and that the maintenance operations recommended by the Manufacturer have been carried out;

2.8.4 have the defect covered by the MG

MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty confirmed as soon as possible, by a MG MOTOR authorized workshop in writing. If the vehicle is un-roadworthy, the Customer must contact the nearest MG MOTOR authorized workshop member or MG MOTOR Assistance.

2.9 The MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty does not apply, and MG MOTOR and MG MOTOR authorized dealer members are exempt from all liabilities, if:

2.9.1 The vehicle has been driven under conditions not in accordance with those stated in the Owner's Manual (example but not limited to: vehicle overloaded or taking part in any type of sports competition, etc.);

2.9.2 The defect observed is due to the Customer having had the vehicle repaired or serviced in a workshop outside the MG MOTOR authorized network and not observing MG Motor's recommendations on the subject.

2.10 By way of consideration for the parts supplied by MG MOTOR under

the MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty, parts replaced under this warranty, shall legally become the property of MG MOTOR.

2.11 All operations, parts and labour, carried out under the MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty are guaranteed until the new vehicle warranty expires.

2.12 Transferring ownership of the vehicle shall not alter the application conditions of the MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty.

3. The MG MOTOR Anti-corrosion Warranty:

3.1 **Duration of the Anti-Corrosion Warranty:** This warranty will apply from the delivery date given on the Owner's Manual for a period of:

- **Personal Registration -**
3 years or Unlimited kilometers (whichever is earlier)
- **Commercial Registration -**
3 years or 1,00,000 kms (whichever is earlier).

- 3.2 Geographical Coverage:** The geographical coverage of the Anti-Corrosion Warranty is identical to that for the MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty.
- 3.3 Anti-Corrosion Warranty field of application**
- 3.3.1** In addition to the MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty, MG MOTOR guarantees the bodywork and sub frame of MG MOTOR vehicle Schedule I from perforation from the interior, due to steel panel corrosion caused by a manufacturing, material or protective product application defect.
- 3.3.2** This guarantee covers the repair or replacement of components with perforated steel panel work due to a manufacturing, material or protective product application defect, acknowledged by the Manufacturer.
- 3.3.3** It is authorized MG MOTOR workshop's discretion to decide whether it is appropriate to repair or replace these components, and to inform the Customer.
- 3.4 The MG MOTOR Anti-Corrosion Warranty does not cover:**
- 3.4.1** any damage which is not covered by the MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty, as defined at the start of this booklet; Mechanical components which are not an integral part of the bodywork or sub-frame (wheel rims, exhaust system, etc.).
- 3.4.2** In case, repairs (including denting or painting) have been carried out on the body of the MG Motor Vehicle in a workshop outside the MG MOTOR authorized network.
- 3.5 Anti - Corrosion Warranty conditions of application**
- 3.5.1** To obtain the Anti-Corrosion Warranty, the Customer must contact any Workshop of the MG MOTOR Authorized Workshop Network - only such Workshop have authorization for operations of this sort.
- 3.5.2** The Customer shall show the duly completed (delivery date and validation of anti-corrosion test coupons) the Owner's Manual as proof of their warranty entitlement.
- 3.5.3** Application of the MG MOTOR Anti-Corrosion Warranty is subject to the anti-corrosion tests on the bodywork and sub-frame. Customer shall ensure that these tests are conducted at the mileage intervals stated in the Owner's Manual, and at least once every two years. Scheduled maintenance services in the MG MOTOR authorized workshop network incorporate these tests.
- 3.5.4** If the Customer requests to have the anti-corrosion test conducted independently of the scheduled maintenance service, the same will be carried out at an extra cost to the Customer.
- 3.5.5** During these tests the Customer shall make sure that the professional carrying out the operation correctly completes the bodywork and sub frame test coupon, in order to validate the continuation of the Anti-Corrosion Warranty.

- 3.5.6 Repairs on any deterioration must be made as soon as possible.
- 3.5.7 The application of the MG MOTOR Anti-Corrosion Warranty is also subject to bodywork and sub-frame repairs being carried out in accordance with MG MOTOR recommendations.
- 3.5.8 The repair or replacement of components under the conditions described in the "field of application" (Paragraph 7.3), shall taken into account the general condition of the vehicle with regard to its age, mileage and maintenance level.
- 3.5.9 Parts replaced under the Anti-Corrosion Warranty legally become the property of MG MOTOR.
- 3.5.10 Repairs and components fitted under the Anti-Corrosion Warranty are guaranteed until the end of the term of the original Anticorrosion Warranty.
- 3.5.11 Transferring ownership of the vehicle does not alter the application conditions of the Anti-Corrosion Warranty.

The MG MOTOR Paintwork Warranty:

- 3.6 Duration of the Paintwork Warranty: MG MOTOR guarantees the bodywork paintwork and painted parts paintwork (door mirrors, bumpers etc.) for 3 years or Unlimited kilometers (for Personal Registration) 3 years or 1 lac kms (for Commercial Registration) (whichever is earlier) from the Delivery Date of the new vehicle.
- 3.7 Geographical Coverage: The geographical coverage of the Paintwork Warranty is identical to that for the MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty.
- 3.8 Paintwork Warranty field of application:
- 3.8.1 This warranty covers the free repair or replacement of components with inherent paintwork defects (deterioration of lacquer or finishing varnish, due to any material, manufacturing or application defect) acknowledged by the Manufacturer, with the MG MOTOR authorized

workshop carrying out the operation, keeping the Customer informed.

- 3.8.2 This repair shall take into account the general condition of the vehicle with regard to its age, mileage and maintenance level.

3.9 The MG MOTOR Paintwork Warranty does not cover:

- 3.9.1 any damage which is not covered by The MG MOTOR New Vehicle Warranty, as defined at the start of this booklet;
- 3.9.2 damage due to force majeure events: lightning, fire, floods, earthquakes, war, riots and attacks;
- 3.9.3 Mechanical components which are not an integral part of the bodywork or sub-frame (wheel rims, exhaust system, etc.).

Damage due to action of road elements (sand, gravel, dust or road debris) which results in stone chipping of paint or glass.

- 3.9.4 In case, the denting or painting job has been carried out on the MG Motor Vehicle in a workshop outside the MG MOTOR authorized network.
- 3.10 Paintwork Warranty conditions of application**
- 3.10.1 To obtain the Paintwork Warranty, the Customer must contact any workshop of the MG MOTOR Authorized Workshop Network - only such Workshop have authorization for operations of this sort.
- 3.10.2 The Customer shall show the duly completed (delivery date) Owner's Manual as proof of their entitlement to the warranty.
- 3.10.3 By way of consideration for the parts supplied by MG MOTOR under the Paintwork Warranty, parts replaced under this warranty legally become the property of MG MOTOR.
- 3.10.4 Repairs and components fitted under the Paintwork Warranty are guaranteed until the end of the term of the original Paintwork Warranty.
- 3.10.5 Transferring ownership of the vehicle does not alter the application conditions of the Paintwork Warranty.
- 4.** This warranty is the entire Warranty given by MG MOTOR and no Authorized Dealer of MG Motor or its or his agent or employee is authorized to extend or enlarge this warranty and no Authorized Dealer of MG Motor or its or his agent or employee is authorized to make any oral warranty on MG MOTOR's behalf.
- 5. Owner's Responsibility**
- 5.1 Proper use, maintenance and care of the vehicle in accordance with the instructions contained in the Owner's Manual. If the vehicle is subject to severe usage conditions, like (but not limited to) operation in extremely dusty, rough, more repeated short distance driving or heavy city traffic during hot weather, maintenance of vehicle should be done more frequently as mentioned in this Owner's Manual.
- 5.2 Retention of maintenance service records. It may be necessary for the customer to show that the required maintenance has been performed, as specified in this Owner's Manual.
- 5.3 In order to maintain the validity of this emission warranty, the vehicle must be serviced by Authorized MG Dealer in accordance with the Owner's Manual.
- 5.4 Production of Pollution Under Control (PUC) certificate valid for the period immediately preceding the test during which the failure is discovered, the test having been carried out either for obtaining a new certificate, or pursuant upon being directed by an officer as referred to in sub-rule (2) of Rule 116 of the Central Motor Vehicle Rules.
- 6.** MG MOTOR reserves the right to make any change in design or make any improvement in the design, structure, technology etc. of the vehicle at any time without any

obligation to make the same change on the vehicles already sold.

7. Warranty service shall be provided only by MG MOTOR's Authorized Dealers and Dealer Service Branch.
8. MG MOTOR's decision is final and binding on the Owner of the vehicle in all warranty matters. MG MOTOR reserves the right for the final decision on all warranty matters. The terms & conditions mentioned
9. The terms and conditions as contained herein shall be construed in accordance to the laws as applicable in India and all disputes arising out of this Warranty will be subject to the jurisdiction of Courts in Gurugram only.

DISCLAIMER

MG Motor India has partnered with multiple application services & content providers for developing the complete/overall ecosystem experience of Internet Car features across all MGI models*. MG Motor India is committed to providing the best user experience and services and acts as an integrator for these application services & content providers. For any customer feedback, MG Motor India will coordinate with the respective content/service provider for resolution.

***Model variants applicable with Internet features.**

**** for limited coverage details, please contact MG authorised service center**

MG Roadside Assistance 24x7 CALL 1800-100-6464

MG Roadside Assistance is designed to enhance your overall MG ownership experience, by providing you with 24hrs/7days emergency support related to the use of your MG Motor Vehicle. Peace of mind motoring-guaranteed.

While it is our sincere hope that your travels are always trouble-free, breakdowns and road traffic accidents do happen - our goal is to ensure that even if your MG is immobilized, whether at home or while travelling, any inconvenience to you and your family is minimized.

Should you ever require assistance, all you need to do is dial our 24-hour assistance hotline: 1800 100 6464 and or press the Call button on your car and MG Roadside Assistance will be there to help. Vehicles will be covered under this program for a period of 3 years from the Date of sale of the vehicle.

Getting Help - What to do when you need Assistance

In the event of a breakdown or accident, simply call MG Roadside Assistance on 1800 100 6464 (toll-free from anywhere in India), or press the Call button on your car. When placing the call, please have the following information handy for assisting the operator in analysing the issue:

- Description of the problem;
- Your location;
- Registered Contact phone number, in case you are calling from a number other than your registered number, as registered with MG;
- License plate number

if you opt for your own vehicle assistance / recovery management, the cost for the same shall be borne by you.

Covered Events

- Mechanical or electrical breakdown leading to stoppage/immobility of the vehicle
- Human error

- o Key problems: locked keys, lost keys, or broken vehicle keys
- o Tyre problems: puncture, bolts or valve related issues
- o Battery problems: flat battery
- o Fuel problems: out of fuel, incorrect fuel, or contaminated fuel (Twice a year, up to 5 lit)
- o Road traffic accident where the vehicle is immobilized

Assistance will be provided no matter where you are (i.e. at home, on the roadside, on the highway, in a parking lot, etc.), as long as you are not already at an Authorized MG Dealer.

SUMMARY OF CUSTOMER BENEFITS

Roadside Assistance at home or on the road

If your vehicle is immobilized, whether at home or on the road, MG Roadside Assistance will attend to your vehicle. For conditions where we decide that the cause of the breakdown/immobilizations can be solved at the roadside, a technician will be sent to try and mobilize your vehicle at your location.

Vehicle Recovery

If your vehicle is unable to be mobilized following a mechanical or electrical breakdown, a recovery vehicle will be sent to recover your vehicle to the nearest authorized MG dealer.

Taxi

If your vehicle is recovered to an authorized MG Dealer, MG Roadside Assistance will also provide taxi assistance.

Custody Services

If towing is delayed, or if the technician on spot is unable to fix your vehicle, MG Roadside Assistance will arrange for a personnel to take custody of your vehicle.

Vehicle Recovery following an Accident

If your vehicle is unable to be mobilized following a road traffic accident, MG Roadside Assistance will organize to send a recovery vehicle to recover your vehicle from the accident site to the nearest authorized MG Dealer.

Medical Coordination

In case of a medical assistance required by you during the breakdown, MG Roadside Assistance team will help for the medical coordination.

Accommodation Assistance

In case of a breakdown occurring far from your hometown (not less than 100 kilometres), and if so needed by you, MG Roadside Assistance will help provide a hotel accommodation for you for one night.

Program Overview – Definitions

• Covered Customers:

The owner (or driver) and all the passengers travelling in the vehicle at the moment the roadside assistance was required, up to the legal passenger limit of the vehicle. The customer may be asked to produce car/other identity documents to verify the eligibility under this Program.

• Covered Vehicles and period of cover:

All new MG vehicles sold by Authorised MG Dealers in India are eligible for free MG Roadside Assistance with Pan India

coverage (except islands, areas with limited entries). Vehicles will be covered under this program for a period of 3 years from the date of sale of the vehicle.

Assistance will be provided no matter where you are (i.e. at home, on the roadside, on the highways, in a parking lot, etc.), as long as you are not already at an Authorized MG Dealer.

Non-covered Events

MG Roadside Assistance is designed to help only in “covered events” that lead to stoppage / immobilization of your vehicle. As a result, this program will not cover following events, including but not limited to:

- Faulty fuel gauge
- Speedometer not working
- Air-conditioning is not working
- Passenger door(s) cannot be opened when there are no passengers in the vehicle
- Boot cannot be opened
- Front and / or rear demisters are not functioning
- Horn is not functioning

- Damaged door mirrors
- Rear view mirror is damaged, but it does not obstruct the driver's vision
- Damaged or faulty fuel cap but vehicle has not run out of petrol and there is enough fuel in the tank to enable the vehicle to reach the nearest Authorized MG Dealer
- Sunroof cannot be opened
- Sunroof cannot be closed but weather conditions are fair, and the vehicle is not exposed to any security risk
- Windows cannot be opened
- Windows cannot be closed but weather conditions are fair, and the vehicle is not exposed to any security risk.
- Seat adjuster is faulty, but the vehicle can be safely driven
- Passenger seat belts are faulty but there are no passengers in the vehicle
- Faulty security system unless the vehicle is immobilized or unless the alarm is sounding continuously
- ABS lights are illuminated
- Air bag warning lights are illuminated
- Traction control lights are illuminated

- Other non-safety related lights/service warnings are illuminated
- Vehicle runs out of windscreen wiper fluid
- Front or rear windscreen wipers faulty but weather conditions are fair

General Exclusions

The following scenarios are general exclusions under the MG Roadside Assistance and therefore MG Roadside Assistance will not be responsible for any assistance costs as a result of any of the following:

- Vehicle is involved in motor racing, rallies, speed or duration tests, practice runs, or operated outside, subject to the exclusivities provided herein and in the owner manual;
- Assistance is required as a result of wars, riots, uprising, mass political demonstrations, pillage, strike, use for military purposes or acts of terrorism, earthquake damage, freak weather conditions, atmospheric phenomena, nuclear transformation phenomena or radiation caused by artificial acceleration of atomic particles;
- Breakdown is caused by deliberate damage, or participation or abetment in a criminal act or offence;
- The immobilization is resulting from damage caused by intervention of the police or other authorities;
- Any damage resulting from the use of the vehicle against the recommendations of the owner manual;
- Any consequential costs and / or damage to property as a result of a breakdown;
- Vehicles kept in a non-roadworthy condition or not serviced in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations;
- The damage / immobilization is caused due to any repair work done on the vehicle is from a workshop which is not a member of the MG Authorised Workshop Network;
- The damage / immobilization is caused to the vehicle due to the negligence / intentional driving of the vehicle or tampering with the vehicle, even after becoming aware of the breakdown / fault / damage.

- If the vehicle identification number (VIN) of an insured vehicle is declared as total loss by the Insurer, the Roadside Assistance (RSA) provided in respect of such vehicle shall become null and void with effect from the date VIN of such vehicle is declared as total loss by the insurer.

General Terms and Conditions

Remain with your Vehicle

- Once you have called MG Roadside Assistance, it is vital that you stay with your vehicle. Should the MG Roadside Assistance representative arrive at your vehicle while it is unattended, the necessary work will not be carried out.

Adverse Weather

- On occasion, adverse weather conditions such as floods, heavy rain, thunder / lighting, other natural calamities or other external factors may affect our ability to provide services and it may become physically impossible to assist you until the weather improves. During such times, our main priority will be to ensure that you and your passengers are taken to a place of safety; the recovery of your vehicle may not be possible until weather conditions permit.

External Factors

- MG will take every effort to reach you once you make the call however external conditions (including traffic, strike etc.), could delay such an effort.

Locked Keys

- Whilst we will always endeavour to provide assistance by the most efficient method, modern security systems sometimes make it extremely difficult for us to gain entry to your vehicle at the roadside should the spare keys not be available. If a forced emergency entry is required, you will be asked to sign a declaration stating that you have granted permission for this to take place and confirming that all costs relating to any resulting damages to your vehicle will be your sole responsibility.

Replacement Costs

- The replacement cost for any damaged part of the vehicle shall not be covered by MG Roadside Assistance, unless it is covered under any other warranty(ies) provided by MG Motor, including the new vehicle warranty, as may be applicable and / or subscribed to by the owner of the MG vehicle.

Right of Refusal

- MG Roadside Assistance shall have the right to refuse any or all benefits under

the program, if it is found that you had furnished false information relating to your eligibility or entitlements to the benefits provided under this program.

Disputes

- Courts situated within the jurisdiction of Gurugram alone shall have the exclusive jurisdiction to decide all disputes that may arise under this service.

Service Coupon



MORRIS GARAGES
Since 1924

Dear Customer,

We are confident that you and your family would be enjoying the safe and comfortable drive of the MG Astor.

We would like to undertake a thorough check-up of the vehicle at 1000 kms or 30 days, whichever occurs earlier. This will also allow us to reemphasize the salient features of the Astor to you.

In the unlikely event of an emergency assistance, please call your nearest MG Dealer or please feel free to call our 24 x 7 pulse hub at 1800 100 6464.

Find your nearest MG authorized dealer by visiting www.mgmotor.co.in/tools/dealers

I confirm that the vehicle has been inspected by me and delivered to my satisfaction. I do abide by MG terms & conditions laid forward for warranty and other vehicle maintenance details.

Customer's Signature

Dealer Stamp & Signature

PDI (One day before delivery)

VIN no.

PDI no.

Date of Delivery.....

Dealer Name.....

Dealer Code

Customer Name

Contact No.

Customer's Signature

Dealer Stamp & Signature

Service Coupon

1st Free Inspection

1 Month / 1000 km (whichever occurs earlier) - Petrol

Engine Oil

☐

Brake Oil / Clutch Fluid

☐

WS Washer Fluid

☐

Check the DTC, Diagnose, Inspect
and Clear the all DTC

☐

Check Fuel Lines for Leakages

☐

Check HVAC for Satisfactory
Performance

☐

Check Front Brake and Rear
Disk pad Clean-Inspect

☐

Customer's Signature

Dealer Stamp & Signature

MG Motor Inspection

1st Free Inspection

1 Month / 1000 km (whichever occurs earlier) - Petrol

VIN

Regn. No.

Delivery Date.....

Date of Service

Kms

I confirm that the job has been attended to my
satisfaction.

Customer's Signature

Dealer Stamp & Signature

GENERAL STATUS REVIEW

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| Check closing efforts of doors | <input type="checkbox"/> | Central locking system | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Other functions | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |

UNDER HOOD

- | | | | |
|--|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| Check fluid levels | <input type="checkbox"/> | Engine oil level | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Brake oil level | <input type="checkbox"/> | Coolant level | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Power steering oil | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| Windshield washer level & add washer fluid | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |

UNDERBODY, WHEELS

- | | | | |
|--|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| Visually check routing, leaks & damage | <input type="checkbox"/> | Check tyre pressure | <input type="checkbox"/> |
|--|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|

ELECTRICAL CHECKS

- | | | | |
|--|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Malfunction indicator lamp | <input type="checkbox"/> | Charging lamp | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Oil pressure lamp | <input type="checkbox"/> | Parking brake lamp / indicator | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| High beam / Turn signal Hazard indicator | <input type="checkbox"/> | All other telltale lamp | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Cigarette lighter/rear defogger | <input type="checkbox"/> | Check lighting system | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Horn / Radio / Outside Mirrors | <input type="checkbox"/> | High / Low beam / Hazard signal | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Turn signal / Flash to pass signal | <input type="checkbox"/> | Front/Rear fog lamps / Tail lamps | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Stop lamp / Reversing lamp / Trunk lamp | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |

DYNAMIC EVALUATION

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| Steering function / noise / abnormal drag | <input type="checkbox"/> | Clutch & gear shifting function / noise | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Accelerating & braking function / noise | <input type="checkbox"/> | Check tyres | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Any other abnormal noise | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |

Note - For detailed information refer section 'Maintenance Schedule'.

Service Coupon

2nd Free Inspection

6 Months / 5000 km (whichever occurs earlier) - Petrol

Engine Oil ☐

Air Filter Element ☐

Pollen / AC Filter ☐

Brake Oil / Clutch Fluid ☐

WS Washer Fluid ☐

Check the DTC, Diagnose,
Inspect and Clear the all DTC ☐

Check Fuel Lines for Leakages ☐

Check HVAC
for Satisfactory Performance ☐

Check Front Brake and Rear
Disk pad-Clean-Inspect ☐

ATF (Trans Oil)* ☐

Check Front and Rear ☐

Brake Disk Pad-Inspect* ☐

Customer's Signature

Dealer Stamp & Signature

MG Motor Inspection

2nd Free Inspection

6 Months / 5000 km (whichever occurs earlier) - Petrol

VIN

Regn. No.

Delivery Date.....

Date of Service

Kms

I confirm that the job has been attended to my
satisfaction.

Customer's Signature

Dealer Stamp & Signature

GENERAL STATUS REVIEW

Check closing efforts of doors	<input type="checkbox"/>	Central locking system	<input type="checkbox"/>
Other functions	<input type="checkbox"/>		

UNDER HOOD

Check fluid levels	<input type="checkbox"/>	Engine oil level	<input type="checkbox"/>
Brake oil level	<input type="checkbox"/>	Coolant level	<input type="checkbox"/>
Power steering oil	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Windshield washer level & add washer fluid	<input type="checkbox"/>		

UNDERBODY, WHEELS

Visually check routing, leaks & damage	<input type="checkbox"/>	Check tyre pressure	<input type="checkbox"/>
--	--------------------------	---------------------	--------------------------

ELECTRICAL CHECKS

Malfunction indicator lamp	<input type="checkbox"/>	Charging lamp	<input type="checkbox"/>
Oil pressure lamp	<input type="checkbox"/>	Parking brake lamp / indicator	<input type="checkbox"/>
High beam / Turn signal Hazard indicator	<input type="checkbox"/>	All other telltale lamp	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cigarette lighter/rear defogger	<input type="checkbox"/>	Check lighting system	<input type="checkbox"/>
Horn / Radio / Outside Mirrors	<input type="checkbox"/>	High / Low beam / Hazard signal	<input type="checkbox"/>
Turn signal / Flash to pass signal	<input type="checkbox"/>	Front/Rear fog lamps / Tail lamps	<input type="checkbox"/>
Stop lamp / Reversing lamp / Trunk lamp	<input type="checkbox"/>		

DYNAMIC EVALUATION

Steering function / noise / abnormal drag	<input type="checkbox"/>	Clutch & gear shifting function / noise	<input type="checkbox"/>
Accelerating & braking function / noise	<input type="checkbox"/>	Check tyres	<input type="checkbox"/>
Any other abnormal noise	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Note - For detailed information refer section 'Maintenance Schedule'.

Service Coupon

3rd Free Inspection

1 Year / 10000 km (whichever occurs earlier) - Petrol

Engine Oil	<input type="checkbox"/>	Steering Geometry / Wheel Balancing /	
Oil Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>	Rotation / Tyre Pressure	<input type="checkbox"/>
Washer Drain Plug	<input type="checkbox"/>	Check the DTC, Diagnose, Inspect	
Air Filter Element	<input type="checkbox"/>	and Clear the all DTC	<input type="checkbox"/>
Spark Plug	<input type="checkbox"/>	Check Fuel Lines for Leakages	<input type="checkbox"/>
Pollen / AC Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>	Check HVAC for	<input type="checkbox"/>
Brake Oil / Clutch Fluid	<input type="checkbox"/>	Satisfactory Performance	
Acc Belt	<input type="checkbox"/>	Check Front Brake and Rear	
Transmission Oil	<input type="checkbox"/>	Disk pad-Clean-Inspect	<input type="checkbox"/>
WS Washer Fluid	<input type="checkbox"/>	Fuel Filter*	<input type="checkbox"/>
		Drain Water from Fuel Filter*	<input type="checkbox"/>

Customer's Signature

Dealer Stamp & Signature

MG Motor Inspection

3rd Free Inspection

1 Year / 10000 km (whichever occurs earlier) - Petrol

VIN

Regn. No.

Delivery Date.....

Date of Service

Kms

I confirm that the job has been attended to my satisfaction.

Customer's Signature

Dealer Stamp & Signature

ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM

Drive Belt (Alternator, Power Steering and A/C Compressor)	<input type="checkbox"/>	Engine Oil (Replace)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Engine Oil Filter (Replace)	<input type="checkbox"/>	Cooling System Hose and Connections	<input type="checkbox"/>
Engine Coolant	<input type="checkbox"/>	Fuel Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>
Fuel Line and Connections	<input type="checkbox"/>	Air Cleaner Element	<input type="checkbox"/>
Spark Plugs & Spark Plug Wires	<input type="checkbox"/>		

CHASSIS AND BODY

Exhaust Pipe & Mountings	<input type="checkbox"/>	Brake Fluid	<input type="checkbox"/>
Front Brake Discs & Pads	<input type="checkbox"/>	Rear Brake Drums & Linings	<input type="checkbox"/>
Parking Brake	<input type="checkbox"/>	Brake Line and Connections (Including Booster)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manual Transaxle Fluid	<input type="checkbox"/>	Steering Wheel & Linkage	<input type="checkbox"/>
Wheel Alignment (When required or as suggested by MG Motor retailer)	<input type="checkbox"/>	Wheel Balancing (When required or as suggested by MG Motor retailer)	
Power Steering Fluid and Line	<input type="checkbox"/>	Drive Shaft Boots	<input type="checkbox"/>
Safety Belts, Buckles & Anchorages	<input type="checkbox"/>	Lubricate Locks, Hinges & Hood Latch	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tyre Condition and Inflation Pressure & Rotation	<input type="checkbox"/>	A/C Mesh Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>
Chassis and Underbody Bolts and Nuts Tight / Secure	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Note - For detailed information refer section 'Maintenance Schedule'.

Change of Ownership Record

Model _____

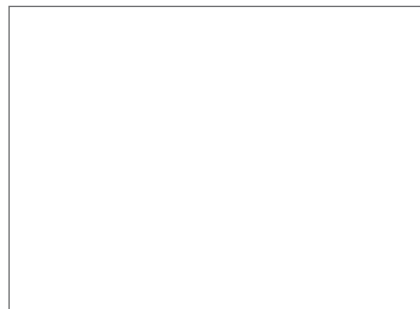
Registration or
License Number | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

VIN _____

New Owner's Name _____

New Owner's Address _____

Telephone No. _____

If resold by MG Motor Dealership
Enter Dealer Stamp in Box above

Periodic Maintenance Schedule - Astor (MT / CVT)^													
Years		1 Month	6 Months	1 Year	2 Years	3 Years	4 Years	5 Years	6 Years	7 Years	8 Years	9 Years	10 Years
Operation / Processes for Periodic Service Schedule	Replacement Frequency: Km / Year whichever is earlier	1000*	5000*	10000*	20000	30000	40000	50000	60000	70000	80000	90000	100000
Engine Oil	10K / 1Yr	I	I	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Oil Filter	10K / 1Yr			R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Washer Drain Plug	10K/1 Year			R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Pollen / AC Filter	20K / 2Yr			I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Air Filter Element	30K / 3Yrs					R			R			R	
Brake Oil / Clutch fluid	30K / 3Yrs		I	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I	R	I
Fuel Filter	40K / 4Yrs						R				R		
Spark Plug	40K		I	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I	I
Acc Belt	Inspection	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant Change	80K / 8Yrs			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	R	I	I
Transmission Oil	100K / 10Yrs												I
WS Washer Fluid	10K/1 Year	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Geometry / Wheel Balancing / Rotation	10K/1 Year			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check the DTC, Diagnos, Inspect and clear the all DTC	10K/1 Year	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check Fuel lines for Leakages	Every Service	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check HVAC for Satisfactory Performance	Every Service	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check front Brake and Rear Disk pad-Clean-Inspect	Every Service	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Vehicle Software Update*	Every service	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U
Sunroof Operation	Special maintenance item	Clean the guide rails and apply special grease when necessary, check for water drain function of sunroof, and clean as required.											

Symbol Abbreviation: R - Replace • U - Check for Vehicle Software version and Update (including campaigns) if required • I - Inspect (Top up if required/Adjust/Gap setting/Clean)

• **NA:** Not applicable • * Labour Free Services.

- Tightening of underbody fasteners, door adjustments and functional checks of all the systems during every service is mandatory.

- Check the coolant level and top up as required, replace if it is contaminated/ discoloured or there is sludge formation.

- Filters, Fluid, Grease, Consumables, Components, Wheel Alignment, Wheel Balancing etc. (but not limited to mentioned) will be replaced on **chargeable basis**.

^ Periodic Maintenance Schedule is for reference. MG reserves right to change the Periodic Maintenance Schedule. For latest Schedule, please refer MYMG APP / Website Owner's Manual.

Periodic Maintenance Schedule - Astor (AT)^

Years		1 Month	6 Months	1 Year	2 Year	3 Year	4 Year	5 Year	6 Year	7 Year	8 Year	9 Year	10 Year
Operation / Processes for Periodic Service Schedule	Replacement Frequency: Km / Year whichever is earlier	1000*	5000*	10000*	20000	30000	40000	50000	60000	70000	80000	90000	100000
Engine Oil	10K / 1Yr	I	I	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Oil Filter	10K / 1Yr			R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Washer Drain Plug	10K/1 Year			R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Pollen / AC Filter	20K / 2Yr			I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Air Filter Element	30K / 3Yrs					R			R			R	
Brake Oil / Clutch fluid	30K / 3Yrs		I	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I	R	I
Spark Plug	40K		I	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I	I
Acc Belt	Inspection	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant Change	80K / 8Yrs			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	R	I	I
Transmission Oil	100K / 10Yrs												I
WS Washer Fluid	10K/1 Year	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Geometry / Wheel Balancing / Rotation	10K/1 Year			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check the DTC, Diagnos, Inspect and clear the all DTC	10K/1 Year	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check Fuel lines for Leakages	Every Service	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check HVAC for Satisfactory Performance	Every Service	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check front Brake and Rear Disk pad-Clean-Inspect	Every Service	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Vehicle Software Update*	Every service	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U
Sunroof Operation	Special maintenance item	Clean the guide rails and apply special grease when necessary, check for water drain function of sunroof, and clean as required.											

Symbol Abbreviation: R - Replace • U - Check for Vehicle Software version and Update (including campaigns) if required • I - Inspect (Top up if required/Adjust/Gap setting/Clean)

• **NA:** Not applicable • * Labour Free Services.

- Tightening of underbody fasteners, door adjustments and functional checks of all the systems during every service is mandatory.

- Check the coolant level and top up as required, replace if it is contaminated/ discoloured or there is sludge formation.

- Filters, Fluid, Grease, Consumables, Components, Wheel Alignment, Wheel Balancing etc. (but not limited to mentioned) will be replaced on **chargeable basis**.

^ Periodic Maintenance Schedule is for reference. MG reserves right to change the Periodic Maintenance Schedule. For latest Schedule, please refer MYMG APP / Website Owner's Manual.

MAINTENANCE RECORD SHEET**(Repair Category - Free Service / Paid Service / Running Repair / Accident Repair)**

Repair Date	R.O. No.	Kms.	Repair Category	Details of Repair Done	Name of Servicing Retailer	Service Adv. Sign.	Retailer Stamp

MAINTENANCE RECORD SHEET

(Repair Category - Free Service / Paid Service / Running Repair / Accident Repair)

Repair Date	R.O. No.	Kms.	Repair Category	Details of Repair Done	Name of Servicing Retailer	Service Adv. Sign.	Retailer Stamp

ANDHRA PRADESH

MG Vijayawada **Jayalakshmi Auto Enterprises Pvt. Ltd.**

- 3S Door # 1-136/3, Gudavalli Junction, NH 16
Service Road, Gudavalli, Vijayawada - 521104

MG Vizag **Tristar Auto Agencies (Vizag) Pvt. Ltd.**

- 1S Beside Kali Matha Mandhir, RK Beach
Junction, Visakhapatnam - 530002

MG Vizag Service **Tristar Auto Agencies (Vizag) Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S Plot No. D-36, Industrial Estate, Marripalem,
Visakhapatnam - 530018

MG Tirupati **Keshvin Auto Motors Pvt. Ltd.**

- 3S 717/B2F1, 200 Feet By-Pass Road,
Thukivakam, Tirupati - 517501

MG Rajahmundry **Jayalakshmi Auto Enterprises Pvt. Ltd.**

- 3S 81-51-06 NH 16 Service Road,
Sri Venkateshwara Nagar

MG Nellore **Keshvin Auto Motors Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 3S
Sy No 525/2 Buranpur, Nellore-Chennai
bypass, Bhuj Nellore

MG Guntur **Jayalakshmi Auto Enterprises Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 3S
No 36, Phase IV Autonagar, Next to Royal
Enfield Showroom, Guntur - 522001

ASSAM

MG Guwahati **Karini Ventures Pvt. Ltd.**

- 1S Royal Orchid, NH37, Near Garchuk Police
Station, Garchuk, Dhirenpara,
Guwahati - 781035

MG Guwahati Service **Karini Ventures Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S AK Deb Road, Katabaril, Gorchuk,
NH 37, Guwahati - 781035

MG Dibrugarh **Karini Ventures Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 3S
AT Road, Opposite Thermal Power Station,
Dibrugarh - 786001

BIHAR

MG Patna **Ashiana Fabicon Pvt. Ltd.**

- 1S Ground Floor, "Ashiana Vihar" Apartment,
Near CDA Building, Rajendra Path,
Patna - 800001

MG Patna Service **Ashiana Fabicon Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S Anisha Bad Main, Patna - 800 002

MG Muzaffarpur **Ashiana Fabicon Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 3S
Shakri Saraiya, Bihar - 843165

CHHATISGARH

MG Raipur **Shivaaya Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- 3S Ring Road No.1, Raipura, Raipur-492099

MG Bilaspur **Shivaaya Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- 3S MG Motors Bilaspur, NH 130, Raipur Main
Raod, Sirgitti, Bilaspur

MG Ambikapur **Shivaaya Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 2S
Industrial Estate, Near Holly Cross School,
Beside of Laxmi Borwell Banaras Road
Ambikapur, Distt. - Surguja - 497001

DELHI

MG Delhi South Safdurjung **Sai Shreeja Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- 1S B-1/4, Safdarjung Enclave

**MG Delhi West Shivaji Marg
MG Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS Plot no 31, Najafgarh Road, Industrial Area,
Shivaji Marg, New Delhi - 110015

**MG Lajpat Nagar
Sai Shreeja Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- EC A-14, Ring Road, Lajpat Nagar- IV,
New Delhi - 110024

**MG Delhi West Rohini
MG Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- EC A1/I, Prashant Vihar Outer Ring Road
Delhi - 110085

**MG Patparganj
Crystal Autocars Pvt. Ltd.**

- EC Plot No 24, Block No 1, Functional Industrial
Estate, Patparganj, Delhi - 110092

**MG Delhi South Service
Sai Shreeja Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S B-67, Phase-I, Okhla, New Delhi - 110020

**MG Delhi West Service
MG Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S 7/20, Kirti Nagar, Ind Area, Delhi - 110015

**MG Okhla Bodyshop
Sai Shreeja Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S D-1, Okhla Industrial Area, Phase -I,
New Delhi - 110 020

**MG North Jahangirpuri Service
(Mechanical+Bodyshop)
MG Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S Plot No. 5, Small Scale Co-operative Industrial
Area, G.T Karnal Road, Delhi

GOA
**MG Goa
Priority Auto Lincs Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS Survey no.166/I, New Taleigao bypass road,
Opp. Taleigao Community Centre. Taleiga-
Goa - 403002

**MG Goa Service
Priority Auto Lincs Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S Survey no.132/I-C, Behind Healthway
Hospital, SE Old Goa, Tiswadi Goa - 403108

**MG Margao
Priority Auto Lincs Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 2S
Plot No U 02-J & U 02-K, Phase 4, Verna
Industrial Estate, Verna, Goa - 403722

GUJARAT
**MG Ahmedabad SG Highway
Concept Motor Garage Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS Plot No 2, Ground Floor, Survey No 841/I
and 2, 10, Signature I, Near Old Railway Line,
SG Highway, Makarba, Ahmedabad - 380051

**MG Surat
Nanavati Autosquare Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS Ground Floor, Icon Business Centre,
Opposite Central Mall, Piplod Dumas Road,
Surat - 395007

**MG Surat Service
Nanavati Autosquare Pvt Ltd**

- 2S Plot # 220-328,Bhatpore GIDC, Behind
Nanavati Toyota, Magdala Hazira Road,
Surat - 394510

**MG Vadodara
Kayakalp Cars Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS Zorba, Akshara Chowk, OP Road,
Vadodara - 390012

**MG Rajkot
Jai Ganesh Autocars Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS Jai Ganesh MG. Opp Krishna Park, Rajkot-
Gondal Highway, Kothariya, Rajkot - 360003

**MG Vapi
Nanavati Autosquare Pvt. Ltd.**

- 3S Survey No 56/1/1, Opp Avadh Utopia, NH-8,
Salvav, Vapi, Tal-Pardi, Dist-Valsad - 396195

**MG Rajkot
Jai Ganesh Autocars Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS Jai Ganesh MG. Opp Krishna Park, Rajkot-
Gondal Highway, Kothariya, Rajkot - 360003

- MG Vapi**
Nanavati Autosquare Pvt. Ltd.
- 3S Survey No 56/1/1, Opp Avadh Utopia, NH-8, Salvav, Vapi, Tal-Pardi, Dist-Valsad - 396195
- MG Gandhinagar**
Concept Motor Garage Pvt. Ltd.
- IS Plot No 29 Old GTS Road NR Thermal Power Station Sector 30 Gandhinagar
- MG Gandhinagar Service**
Concept Motor Garage Pvt. Ltd.
- IS Survey No. 600, Nr.Valad, Gandhinagar - 382355
- MG Ahmedabad Naroda**
Concept Motor Garage Pvt. Ltd.
- EC GF-4, Neelkanth Square, Nr.Railway Crossing, NH8, Naroda, Ahmedabad - 382330
- MG Ahmedabad Service**
Concept Motor Garage Pvt. Ltd.
- 2S Survey No 321, Anuj Estate, Opp. Essar Petrol Pump, S.P. Ring Road, Sanathal Ahmedabad - 382210
- MG Vadodara Service**
Kayakalp Cars Pvt. Ltd.
- 2S 362 GIDC Makarpura, Vadodara-390010

- MG Rajkot Service**
Jai Ganesh Autocars Pvt. Ltd.
- 2S Jai Ganesh MG, Near Jagannath Marble, Rajkot Gondal Highway, Kothariya, Rajkot - 360003
- MG Ambawadi**
Concept Motor Garage Pvt. Ltd.
- IS GF, Ashwamegh Elegance, Opposite SBI Zonal Office, Ambawadi, Ahmedabad
- MG Bhavnagar**
Jai Ganesh Autocars Pvt. Ltd.
- Z-Next 2S
Plot no:404, Rajkot-Bhavnagar Highway, Opp:Viraj Farm, Vartej-Bhavnagar - 364060
- MG Anand**
Kayakalp Cars Pvt. Ltd.
- Z-Next 3S
Near Jay Ambe Nagar Society, Rajodpura, Chikhodra - 388001
- MG Mehsana**
Concept Motor Garage Pvt. Ltd.
- Z-Next 3S
Near Celebration Party Plot, Opposite Green Meadows, Ahmedabad – Mehsana Highway, Mehsana - 384002

- MG Bharuch**
Nanavati Autosquare Pvt. Ltd.
- Z-Next 3S
Nanavati Auto Square Pvt Ltd, LS56/A, NR, Reliance Petrol Pump NH08, Vagusana, Bharuch - 393010
- MG Jamnagar**
Jai Ganesh Autocars Pvt. Ltd.
- Z-Next 3S
Opp: Yamuna Petroleum, Hapa Industrial Area, Rajkot-Jamnagar Highway, Hapa-Jamnagar - 361120
- MG Himmatnagar**
Concept Motor Garage Pvt. Ltd.
- Z-Next 3S
Survey No 97/3, N.H No. 8, Piplodi, Himmatnagar - 383001
- MG Gandhidham**
Jai Ganesh Autocars Pvt. Ltd.
- Z-Next 3S
122, Rabindranath Tagore Rd, Ward 5, Adipur, Gandhidham - 370205

HARYANA

- MG Gurgaon Flagship Showroom**
Cargo Motors(Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.
- IS Sector 15 Part 2, Gurugram, Haryana 122022

MG Karnal
Rahul Garages LLP

- 3S Adjoining Sudhanshu ji Maharaj Ashram,
Near Devi Lal Chowk, Karnal

MG Panipat
Rahul Garages LLP

- IS Near HUDA Office, Sector 18, G.T Road,
Panipat

MG Sonipat
MG Cars Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S Opposite Ashoka University, Sector 37,
GT Road, Sonipat

MG Ambala Service
Gitanish Motors Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S 9 KM Stone, Village Khuddi, Jagadhari Road,
Cantt, adjoining Elegant Honda, Ambala

MG Rohtak
Lohchab Autocar Pvt. Ltd.

- IS 4 KM Stone, HSIIDC Industrial Area, Rohtak-
Hisar Road, Rohtak - 124001

MG Hisar
Gitanish Motors Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S 14.5 Milestone NH65, Chandigarh Road,
Hisar - 125006

MG Gurgaon Metropolis
Cargo Motors(Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.

- EC MGF Metropolis, Sector 28, Gurugram

MG Faridabad
Cargo Motors(Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.

- EC 14/6, Mathura Rd, Pocket B, Sector 27,
Faridabad

MG Gurgaon Service
Cargo Motors(Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S Sector 74A, Gurugram - 122001

MG Panipat Service
Rahul Garages LLP

- 2S Behind Radha Swami Satsang Bhawan,
Sector 18, Panipat

MG Rohtak Service
Lohchab Autocar Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S 8 KM Stone, Rohtak-Hisar Road, Village Bahu-
Akbarpur, Rohtak - 124001

MG Faridabad Bodyshop
Cargo Motors(Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S 160 A, DLF Industrial Area Ph-I,
Faridabad - 121003

MG Rewari
Cargo Motors(Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.

- Z-Next 2S
Ward No. 5, Opposite Madhusudan School,
Delhi Road, Rewari - 123035

MG Yamuna Nagar
Rahul Garages LLP

- Z-Next 3S
Near Agarsen Chowk, Opp Dimple Cinema,
Jagadhri, Yamuna Nagar - 135001

HIMACHAL PRADESH
MG Mandi Service
Krishna Motor Garage

- 3S Vill.Lunapani PO Bhangrotu The, Balh Distt,
Mandi - 175021

JAMMU & KASHMIR
MG Jammu
Arise Autoz Pvt. Ltd.

- IS Malik Market, Narwal Bypass Jammu - 180016

MG Jammu Service
Arise Autoz Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S Malik Market, Narwal Bypass Jammu - 180016

MG Srinagar
Arise Autoz Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S Tangpora Bemina Bypass Near Arise Hyundai,
Srinagar

MG Anantnag
Arise Autoz Pvt. Ltd.

- Z-Next 3S
NH-1A, Uranhall, Anantnag - 192101

JHARKHAND

MG Ranchi Singhania Future Pvt. Ltd.

- IS Near Firayalals Pulsar Plaza, Line Tank Rd,
Ranchi - 834001

MG Jamshedpur Singhania Future Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S Plot No 229 Usha More, Tata Kandra Main
Road, Gamharia Sariakella Kharsawan,
Jamshedhpur - 832108

MG Dhanbad Singhania Future Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S G.T.Road, At Gahira Nirsa Road, Govindpur,
Gahira, Dhanbad - 828109

MG Dhanbad Dhansar Chowk Singhania Future Pvt. Ltd.

- EC Beside JCB Showroom, Nr Radha Krishna
Mandir, Dhansar Chowk, Dhanbad - 828106

MG Ranchi Service Singhania Future Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S NH-33, Chakla, Ormanjhi, Ranchi - 835219

KARNATAKA

MG Bangalore Electronic City Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.

- IS 195/6/2, Ward No 192, Beratena Agrahara,
Luv Kusha Nagar, Hosur Road,
Bangalore - 560100

MG Bangalore Kalyan Nagar Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.

- IS Property Bearing No.100/1 And Bearing
Site No.3, Now Come Within The Limites
Of BBMP Khata No.164, Situated At
Chikkathayappa Reddy Layout, First Cross,
Chelekere Village, Outer Ring Road,
Kalyanagar Post Bangalore - 560043

MG Mysore Dyuthi Automobiles Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S Plot No. 201/1&2, Hunsur Road,
Mysore - 570017

MG Hubli Bellad and Company Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S Bellad Enterprises Pvt Ltd, Opp NGEF,
Rayapur, PB Road, Hubli - 580025

MG Mangalore Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S Survey No. 38, Village, 2 Kuloor - Kavoore Rd,
Kuloor, Padukodi, Mangalore - 575013

MG Bangalore ORR Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.

- EC Shree Bhuvanewari Vokkaligara Sangha,
Survey No 102- B Narayanapura, ORR,
Bangalore - 560016

MG Bangalore JP Nagar Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.

- EC BBMP New Municipal No.14, Situated At 100
Feet Road, 4th Phase, J.p. Nagar, BBMP Khata
Bearing Pid No. 57-116-14, Bangalore-560078

MG Bangalore Chord Road Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.

- EC Site Bearing No. 84 (old No.32), Situated at
20th Main, II-Block, in Rajajinagar Extension,
Ward No.15, BBMP Khata bearing PID No.15-
12-84, Bangalore - 560010

MG Bangalore Electronic City Service Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S Workshop No.1B, Old Khata No.6/2,
Prasently BBMP No. 384/6/2 I/B, situated
at Berattena Agrahara, Konapana Agrahara
Grama Panchayat, Electronic City, Hosur Main
Road, Bangalore - 560100

MG Bangalore North Service Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S MVIT Workshop- Sy No.32/33, Nellukunte
Village, Jalahalli Hobli, Now Yelahanka Taluk,
MVIT College Road, Hunasamaranahalli Post,
Bangalore - 562157

**MG Bangalore Mahadevpura
(Mechanical) South
Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S No.505 (Old No. 501/7), Puttappa Industrial Estate, Mahadevpura

**MG Bangalore Central
Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS GF, 40/4, Lavelle Road, Bangalore - 560001

**MG Mysore Road South
Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 2S
Sri Adiga Automotives, 75, I, Outer Ring Rd, 2nd Phase, Hosakerehalli Layout, Banashankari 3rd Stage, Banashankari, Bengaluru - 560086

**MG Tumkur North
Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 2S
Arihant Sales & Service, Mahaveer Oil Mill Compound, Sira Road, Tumkur - 572106

**MG Belgaum
Bellad and Company Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 3S
Shrikrishna Weaving Mill Compound, Vengurla Road, Vijaynagar, Belgaum - 591108

**MG Hasan
Dyuthi Automobiles Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 3S
54/I, Doddamandiganahally Village, Hasan City, Hasan - 573210

**MG Gulbarga
Bellad and Company Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 3S
Carnation Car Services, NH 218, Humnabad Rd, Kapnoor, Gulbarga - 585104

**MG Udupi
Jubilant Motorworks Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 3S
MG Showroom, Opposite to Ganesh Marbals, 9P4R+P99, Nittur, Udupi, Karnataka -576102

KERALA

**MG Cochín
CoastLine Garages India Pvt. Ltd.**

- 3S XII/801-B, Opp. St. Mary's Chapel, MC Road, Thellakom P.O., Kottayam - 686630

**MG Calicut
CoastLine Garages India Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS Opposite West Hill Post Office, Kannur Road, West Hill P.O, Calicut - 673005

**MG Thrissur
CoastLine Garages India Pvt. Ltd.**

- 3S Near Palliakara Toll Plaza, NH-47, Menmankkiara Chitissery PO Thrissur - 680301

**MG Trivandrum
Pothen Wheels Private Limited**

- IS KJ Square, TC-55/719/1, Kaimanam, Karmana, Trivandrum - 695040

**MG Trivandrum
Pothen Wheels Private Limited**

- 3S XII/801-B, Opp. St. Mary's Chapel, MC Road, Thellakom P.O., Kottayam - 686630

**MG Calicut Service
CoastLine Garages India Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S Puthukode Road, Parammal Azhinhilam, Ramanattukara, Calicut - 673633

**MG Trivandrum Service
Pothen Wheels Private Limited**

- 2S T.C new 49/461, T.C old 52/459, Thejas Compound, Vellayani Junction, Nemam P.O, Trivandrum - 695020

**MG Alappuzha
CoastLine Garages India Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next - 2S
8/51 I-B, Mararikulam, Kalavoor, Opp Valiya Kalavoor Temple, Alappuzha - 688522

MG Motor India Sales and Service Network

MG Kollam Pothen Wheels Private Limited

Z-Next - 2S
XII/801-B, Opp. St. Mary's Chapel, MC Road,
Thekkom P.O., Kottayam - 686630

MG Malappuram CoastLine Garages India Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next - 3S
Aripa Post, Thirurkad, Aripa Schoolpadi,
Malappuram - 679321

MG Palakkad CoastLine Garages India Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next - 1S
National Highway-544, Near Gov. Medical
College Palakkad, Kadamkode, Manapullikavu,
Palakkad

MG Palakkad CoastLine Garages India Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next - 1S
Meen Chatti, Service Road, Kadamkod,
Kalamandapam, Palakkad - 678001

MADHYA PRADESH

MG Indore Hriday Cars Private Limited

1S 1/2-Anoop Nagar, AB Road Indore-452001

MG Bhopal Hriday Cars Private Limited

1S Near Shiv Mandir, Ahmedpur Kalan
Hoshangabad Road, Bhopal - 462026

MG Gwalior Sumedha Vehicles Private Limited

3S Shivpuri Link Road, Village Kedarpur,
Gwalior - 474001

MG Jabalpur Khatwani Motors Pvt. Ltd.

3S 1142, opp. Bhasin arcade, Axis Bank, Prem
Nagar, Nagpur Road, Madan Mahal,
Jabalpur - 482002

MG Indore Service Hriday Cars Private Limited

2S Plot no 30/2, Opposite Isuzu Lasudiya Mori
Dewas Naka, Near Toll Kata, Indore - 453771

MG Bhopal Service Hriday Cars Private Limited

2S Plot No-02, Natraj Society-A, Near 11 Mile,
Ratanpur, Bhopal - 462047

MG Ratlam Hriday Cars Private Limited

Z-Next 2S
Sala Khedi, Ratlam-Neemuch Highway-457001

MG Shahdol Khatwani Motors Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 2S
BY Pass Road NH - 78, Burhar Road, Near
Old Tata Workshop, Shahdol - 484001

MG Satna Khatwani Motors Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 2S
1168, Kripalpur, Rewa Road, Satna - 485001

MG Chhatarpur Khatwani Motors Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 2S
Ward-32 Near New Panna Naka,
Chhatarpur - 471405

MAHARASHTRA

MG Mumbai South Krishiv Auto Agencies Private Limited

1S Cynergy IT Park, Near Maratha Udyog
Bhavan, Appa Saheb Marathe Marg,
Prabhadevi, Mumbai - 400025

MG Mumbai West Krishiv Auto Agencies Private Limited

3S CTS 227, Service Road, Near Junction of JVL
& Western Express Highway, Gupha Tekdi,
Opp. Balsaheb Thackrey Hospital, Jogeshwari
(East), Mumbai - 400063

MG Thane
Tejpal Motors Pvt. Ltd.

- IS Shop no 16, Dosti Imperia, Ghodbunder Road, Thane West - 400610

MG Pune Wakad
B.U Bhandari Auto Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S Survey no 142, Hissa no 1+2/5, Wakad, Mumbai Bangalore Highway, Pune - 411057

MG Nagpur
Nangia Cars Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S 33B 1/4 Hinghna MIDC Opp Nangia Speciality Hospital Nagpur - 440028

MG Kolhapur
Unique Automobiles Maharashtra Pvt. Ltd.

- IS S.No 592, H.No 448I 1st Stop MIDC Shirolji(P) Tal-Hatkanangale, Kolhapur - 416122

MG Nasik
Jitendra Wheels (N) Pvt. Ltd.

- IS B-88 MIDC Ambad, Mumbai Agra Highway, Next to Hotel Gateway, Nashik- 422010

MG Aurangabad
Dhoot Motors Autotech Pvt. Ltd.

- IS ABC Complex, Adalat Road, Aurangabad - 431005

MG Pune Central
B.U Bhandari Auto Pvt. Ltd.

- 3S 2422, General Thimayya Road, East Street Camp, J William & Co, Pune - 411001

MG Solapur
Gandhi Cars

- 3S 75/5/1, Bale, Pune Road, Solapur - 413255

MG Mumbai Malad
Krishiv Auto Agencies Private Limited

- EC Shakti Premises, Near Inorbit Mall, New Link Road, Ram Nagar, Malad (West) Opp. Cloud Nine Hospital, Mumbai - 400064

MG Navi Mumbai
Tejpal Motors Pvt. Ltd.

- EC Old Mahindra Showroom, Next to AutoBahn VW Showroom - 400706

MG Thane Service
Tejpal Motors Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S Western Extrusion Industries, Near Capital Hotel, Thane West - 400606

MG Kolhapur Service
Unique Automobiles Maharashtra Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S C/O-Choughle Machines Pvt. Ltd., A- 7/18, MIDC, Shirolji, Kolhapur - 416122

MG Nasik Service
Jitendra Wheels (N) Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S P-11/2, Ambad MIDC, near Volksawagen Showroom, opp Lokmat office, Mumbai Agra Highway, Nasik - 422010

MG Aurangabad Service
Dhoot Motors Autotech Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S Adalat Road, Next to High Court, Aurangabad - 431005

MG Malad Service
Krishiv Auto Agencies Private Limited

- 2S CTS 301 of Village Valnai Near Mith Chowky Link Road, Malad, Mumbai - 400097

MG Navi Mumbai Service (Mechanical)
Tejpal Motors Pvt. Ltd.

- 2S Plot No 238, MIDC, TTC Industrial Area Vane Village, Navi Mumbai - 400607

MG South Mumbai Service (Mechanical)
Krishiv Auto Agencies Private Limited

- 2S MG South, Eastern Metle Works, Dattaram Lad Marg, Near Sita Sadan, Kalachowki, Byculla East - 400033

MG Navi Mumbai Chembur
Tejpal Motors Pvt. Ltd.

- IS Natraj Compound, Dr. C. G. Road, Near Shivaji Maharaj Chowk, Chembur, Mumbai - 400074

MG Sangli
Unique Automobiles Maharashtra Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 2S
C.S.No. 290 A/2, Vakhar Bhag, Sangli - 416416

MG Jalgaon
Jitendra Wheels (N) Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 2S
C6/opp Vasumitra Hotel, Raymond Chowk, MIDC Jalgaon - 425003

MG Shirdi
Jitendra Wheels (N) Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 2S
Shri Ganesh Auto Scan, Nagar- Manmad Road, At post: Sakuri, Taluka Rahata, Dist: Ahmednagar - 423107

MG Baramati
B.U Bhandari Auto Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 3S
Near by Dhone Ford, Nevse Basti, Morgaon Road, Baramati - 413102

MG Ahmednagar
Jitendra Wheels (N) Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 3S
Nagar Manmad Road, MIDC Near Gajanan Colony Chowk, Nav Nagapur, Ahmednagar

MG Chandrapur
Nangia Cars Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 3S
MG Chandrapur, Plot No. X-12, Chandrapur (Tadali) Growth Centre, Chandrapur

MG Nanded
Dhoot Motors Autotech Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 3S
House No 542-I, Opposite Spinning Mill, near Sambhaji Sut Girni, Wajegaon, Nanded - 431602

MG Satara
Unique Automobiles Maharashtra Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 3S
289/2, Wadhe-Satara Road, Near Pooja Petrol Pump, Wadhe - 415011

MG Amravati
Nangia Cars Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 3S
Badnera Road, Opposite D Mart, Guruchhaya Colony, Gopal Nagar, Amravati, Maharashtra - 444607

MG Latur
Dhoot Motors Autotech Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 3S
Sree Nagar, Latur MIDC - 413531

MG Dhule
Jitendra Wheels (N) Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 3S
P-62, Avdhan MIDC, behind Botel Manas-424311

ODISHA

MG Bhubaneswar
Empreo Wheels Private Limited

3S Plot No. 86/88, Near Apex Institute of Technology & Management, Pahala, NH-16, Bhubaneswar - 752101

MG Angul
Empreo Wheels Private Limited

Z-Next 1S
NH 55 Telco Chowk Nuahata, Banarpal, Angul - 759128

MG Angul
Empreo Wheels Private Limited

Z-Next 2S
NH 55 Telco Chowk Nuahata, Banarpal, Angul - 759128

MG Sambalpur
Empreo Wheels Private Limited

Z-Next 3S
Plot No. 231 C/o- Samal Equip At-Pardhiapali Po-Sankarma, Sambalpur

MG Balasore Empreo Wheels Private Limited

Z-Next 3S
Plot No-914/1175/1565 C/o Samal Equip inf-
Morden Engineering College, Nh-5 Khannager,
Balasore

PUDUCHERRY

MG Puducherry FPL Vehicles Pvt. Ltd.

3S No.1 Cuddalore, Puducherry ECR Main Road,
Ariyankuppam, Puducherry - 605007

PUNJAB

MG Chandigarh Tricity Krishna Motor Garage

1S Business Block, Elante Mall -178, MW Area,
Industrial Area Phase I, Chandigarh - 160002

MG Ludhiana Gitansh Motors Pvt. Ltd.

3S GT Road Jugiana, Adjoining Indian Oil Petrol
Pump, Ludhiana - 141010

MG Jalandhar Cargo Motors (Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.

3S BSF Chowk, G.T. Road, Jalandhar - 144001

MG Patiala Krishna Motor Garage

3S Near Casba Resort, Rajpura Patiala Road,
Patiala - 147001

MG Amritsar Cargo Motors (Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.

1S Khasra No.-1248, VPO -Daburji, Near Golden
Gate, GT Road, Amritsar - 143022

MG Mohali Krishna Motor Garage

3S Plot no 3, Janta Industrial Estate, Sector 82,
SAS Nagar, Mohali - 160082

MG Amritsar Service Cargo Motors (Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.

2S Opp Bhagat Ford Service, Daburjee, Rampura
Road, Amritsar - 143002

MG Hoshiarpur Cargo Motors (Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 2S
Bharvain Road Near Ambay Velly,
Hoshiarpur - 146001

MG Nawanshahr Cargo Motors (Kutch) Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 2S
Opp Civil Hospital, Chandigarh Road, Bill,
Zethu Mazra Nawanshahr - 144514

MG Bhatinda Gitansh Motors Pvt. Ltd.

Z-Next 3S
OPP. - IVY Hospital Bhai Mati Das Nagar
Bathinda Mansa Road, Bathinda - 151001

RAJASTHAN

MG Jaipur Tonk Road GPS Automobiles Pvt. Ltd.

1S Plot No. 2& 3/4, Choudhary Charan Singh
Colony, Tonk Road, Jaipur - 302029

MG Jodhpur Ganpati Four Wheels Pvt. Ltd.

3S Plot No - 18, Opp. Saras Dairy, Heavy
Industrial Area, Jodhpur-342003

MG Kota Om Automotors Pvt. Ltd.

1S Om Metal Infra projects Ltd. Spl I (A) IPIA
Jhalawar Road, Near Anantpura Chauraha,
Kota - 324005

MG Ajmer GPS Automobiles Pvt. Ltd.

3s Khasra No. 45,46,47, Ajmer By Pass NH 8
Badliya Chouraha, Near Nareli Jain Temple,
Ajmer - 305024

**MG Jaipur Ajmer Road
GPS Automobiles Pvt. Ltd.**

- EC Near Bajaj Capital, G-3, Anukampa Tower,
Church Road (M.I. Road), Gopalbari,
Jaipur - 302001

**MG Jaipur Service
GPS Automobiles Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S G-22I Sitapura Industrial Area, Sitapura,
Jaipur - 302022

**MG Kota Service
Om Automotors Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S Om Metal Infraprojects Ltd, Plot No.A 21-22
Industrial Area Estate, Kota - 324005

**MG Sikar
GPS Automobiles Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 2S
Near R.T.O., Jaipur - Jhunjhunu Bypass,
Sikar - 332001

**MG Sri Ganganagar
Ganpati Four Wheels Pvt. Ltd**

- Z-Next 2S
Chak 3 ML, Suratgarh Rd, Hanumangarh -
335001

**MG Bhilwara
PPS Motors Private Limited**

- Z-Next 2S
E-31 Madav Nagar, Bhilwara - 311001

**MG Udaipur
PPS Motors Private Limited**

- 3S CP-6/CP-7, Madri Industrial Area - 313001

TAMIL NADU

**MG Chennai Anasalai
FPL Vehicles Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS NO. 824/2, Annasali Nandnam,
Chennai - 600035

**MG Coimbatore
PPS Motors Private Limited**

- 3S No-138, Avinashi Road, Chinniyampalayam,
Coimbatore - 641062

**MG Madurai
PPS Motors Private Limited**

- 3S Shed No. D-23, Nilaiyur First Bit, Uchapatti
Village, Thirumangalam, Madurai - 625402

**MG Salem
PPS Motors Private Limited**

- 3S S.NO.151/1, N.H.44, Bangalore Highway,
Mamangam Salem

**MG Trichy
PPS Motors Private Limited**

- 3S 31/3A, D/NO. Dindugal Mainroad, Ramji
Nagar, Punganur

**MG Chennai OMR
FPL Vehicles Pvt. Ltd.**

- EC No 4, Perungudi Industrial Estate, Perungudi,
Old Mahabalipuram Road, Chennai - 600097

**MG Chennai Service
FPL Vehicles Pvt. Ltd.**

- 2S Developed Plot No. 5, South Phase, Thiru
Vi. Ka. Industrial Estate, Guindy, Chennai -
600032

**MG Ambattur
FPL Vehicles Pvt. Ltd.**

- IS Sp 98, Southern Avenue Road, Ambattur
Industrial Estate, Chennai - 600058

**MG Vellore
FPL Vehicles Pvt. Ltd.**

- Z-Next 3S
33/5A1, Chennai Bangalore Highway,
Perumugai, Vellore - 632009

**MG Thanjavur
PPS Motors Private Limited**

- Z-Next 3S
SY. No:133/4, New SY. No:133/4A1A,
Papammal Pannerselvam Nagar,
Nanjikottaivattam Village

MG Erode PPS Motors Private Limited

Z-Next 3S

1/320, Veppampalayam, Pichandampalayam,
Perundurai Main Road, Kadirampatti Post,
Erode

TELANGANA

MG Hyderabad Banjara Hills Raam4Wheelers LLP

IS 8-2-120/86/10,10A,11B,11C and 11D, Opp:
Hotel Park Hyatt, Road Number 2, Banjara
Hills, Hyderabad - 500033

MG Hyderabad Kondapur Raam4Wheelers LLP

3S Plot no.192,Serilingampally, Botanical Garden
Road, Camelot Place, Gouthami Colony,
Kondapur, Hyderabad - 500084

MG Hyderabad Gachibowli RAAM4WHEELERS LLP

EC 7-56/19, Dargah Road, Radhe Nagar,
Gachibowli, Rai Durg - 500035

MG Hyderabad Service RAAM4WHEELERS LLP

2S H. No. 7-8-188/3, Gautam Nagar, Balanagar,
Secunderabad - 500011

MG Attapur Raam4Wheelers LLP

2S Plot No - 28, 29, Door no. 2-5-28, Survey No
30, Upperpally Village, Rajendra Nagar Mandal,
Hyderabad

MG Nizamabad RAAM4WHEELERS LLP

Z-Next 2S

H.No.1-1-7/D/1A/10 Near Mannuru Kapur
Kalayana Madam, Pragathi Nagar, Nizamabad
- 503001

MG Khammam RAAM4WHEELERS LLP

Z-Next 2S

Junction H NO 10-6, 184/5, Bypass, Raparthi
Nagar, Khammam - 507002

MG Mahabubnagar RAAM4WHEELERS LLP

Z-Next 2S

Plot No. 1&3, Survey No.3A, Opp: SVS
Medical College, Near Chaitanya Central
School, Yenugonda, Mahaboobnagar - 509001

MG Warangal Raam4Wheelers LLP

Z-Next 1S

H.No: 23-6-201/6/1, Madatha Towers
Dwaraka Nagar, Hunter Road, Hanamkonda,
Warangal Urban - 506002

MG Warangal Raam4Wheelers LLP

Z-Next 2S

12-8-301/10 Bondivagu, Beside Tafe
Showroom, Hunter Road, Near Greenwood,
Hanamkonda, Warangal - 506001

MG Karimnagar Raam4Wheelers LLP

Z-Next 3S

Near Kaloji Statue, Adjacent To Mahaveer
Marble & Granites, Jagital Road, Rekurthi

UTTAR PRADESH

MG Noida Crystal Autocars Private Limited

3S D-2, Sector 8, Noida - 201301

MG Lucknow Chinhat Beeaar Autowheels India Pvt. Ltd.

3S Milestone No. 111, Faizabad Road, Chinhat,
Lucknow - 227105

MG Kanpur Socmo Cars Private Limited

IS 15/63, Rudra House, Civil Lines,
Kanpur - 208001

MG Agra NRL Cars Pvt. Ltd.

3S 404, Nagla Padi, Near Arvind Hyundai 282005

MG Varanasi Puneet Car Sales Private Limited			MG Lucknow Hazratganj Beeaar Autowheels India Pvt. Ltd.			MG Bulandshahr Crystal Autocars Private Limited		
IS	Andhrapull, Chaukaghat, Varanasi - 221002		EC	10 Ashok Marg, Opposite GST Bhawan, Hazratganj, Lucknow - 226001		Z-Next 2S	Chandpur Village, Near MMR Mall, GT Rd, Chandpur, Bulandshahr - 203001	
MG Bareilly Keshav Raj Automobiles Private Limited			MG Kanpur Service Socmo Cars Private Limited			MG Mathura NRL Cars Pvt. Ltd.		
3S	4.5 KM Rampur Road, C. B Ganj Bareilly-243001		2S	12/483, Macrobertganj, Kanpur - 208002		Z-Next 2S	In front of Mathura Refinery Main Gate, Mathura Bypass, Mathura - 281006	
MG Prayagraj Puneet Car Sales Private Limited			MG Varanasi Service Puneet Car Sales Private Limited			MG Sultanpur Beeaar Autowheels India Pvt. Ltd.		
3S	Varanasi, Allahabad Road, Andanva, Jhusi Khona - 211019		2S	Grand Trunk Rd, Parao, Near Ambition Institute of Technology, Varanasi - 221002		Z-Next 3S	Dream Nissan, 525, near Jail Gate, opp. Ganga Garden, Gabhariya, Sultanpur - 228001	
MG Gorakhpur Beeaar Autowheels India Pvt. Ltd.			MG Gorakhpur Service Beeaar Autowheels India Pvt. Ltd.			MG Moradabad Keshav Raj Automobiles Private Limited		
IS	Vrindavan Towers, Medical College Road, Basharatpur, Gorakhpur		2S	BL-7, Sector 15, GIDA, Sahjanwa		Z-Next 3S	Bhatawali, Kanth Rd, Opp. Hanuman Mandir, next to Arjun Vasui Hyundai Service, Moradabad	
MG Jhansi Socmo Motors LLP			MG Ghaziabad Service (Mechanical) Crystal Autocars Private Limited			MG Aligarh NRL Cars Pvt. Ltd.		
3S	Society Trucking- Bharat Benz (old State Bank Building), Digara, Kanpur Jhansi Road, Jhansi - 208001		2S	Khasra No. 1336-1337, Mainapur Industrial Area, Meerut Road, Ghaziabad		Z-Next 3S	Old Niharika JP Force Showroom, Meharwal GT Road, Near Meharwal Mod, Aligarh	
MG Ghaziabad Crystal Autocars Private Limited			MG Lucknow Transport Nagar Service (Mechanical) Beeaar Autowheels India Pvt. Ltd.					
EC	Block G, Patel Nagar 3, Ghaziabad - 201003		2S	E-28/49B, Near Parking no. 9, Transport Nagar, Lucknow				
			MG Lucknow South Beeaar Autowheels India Pvt. Ltd.					
			IS	Shop no- 001, GF, JB Metro heights, Kanpur Road, Lucknow				

**MG Meerut
Grand Vehicles (P) Limited**

IS Abhikarm, Civil Lines, Meerut - 250001

**MG Meerut Service
Grand Vehicles (P) Limited**

2S CP 4, Shradhapuri Ph. 2, Kankarkhera, NH 58
Bypass, Meerut - 250001

UTTARAKHAND

**MG Dehradun
Grand Vehicles (P) Limited**

3S Saharanpur Road, Mahobewala Chowk,
Dehradun - 248002

**MG Haldwani
Keshav Raj Automobiles Private
Limited**

3S Siddharth City Dewalchaur bandobasti 5KM
Rampur Road, Jeetpur Negi, Haldwani

**MG Roorkee
Grand Vehicles (P) Limited**

Z-Next 3S
NH 58, Rehmadpur, Uttarakhand -247667

WEST BENGAL

**MG Kolkata South
Auto Hi-Tech Pvt. Ltd.**

IS 97A Southern Avenue, Kolkata 700029

**MG Siliguri
Siliguri Auto Works Pvt. Ltd.**

3S 2, 1/2 Mile, Sevoke Road, Siliguri

**MG Kolkata North
Auto Hi-Tech Pvt. Ltd.**

EC EcoCentre Ambuja Neotia, EM Block,
Sector V, Salt Lake City, Kolkata - 700091

**MG Kolkata Service
Auto Hi-Tech Pvt. Ltd.**

2S 34A C.N. Roy Road, Kolkata - 700029

**MG Durgapur
Auto Hi-Tech Pvt. Ltd.**

Z-Next 2S
Mozumder Automobiles, Banskopa (Near L&T
More) Bamunara, Durgapur - 713212

**MG Gangtok
Siliguri Auto Works Pvt. Ltd.**

Z-Next 3S
MG Gangtok, Khangsarpa Building, Below
Tadong School, Tadong Bazaar, Gangtok,
East Sikkim

VEHICLE RECORD SHEET

MODEL																				
CHASSIS NO.																				
ENGINE NO.																				
KEY NO.																				
DATE OF DELIVERY																				
MILEAGE (KM)																				
BATTERY	MAKE										SR NO./ BATCH CODE									
TYRE	TYRE LOCATION					FR RH			FR LH			RR RH			RR LH					
	MAKE										BATCH NUMBER									

OWNER'S NAME & ADDRESS:

ADDRESS OF SELLING DEALER

Showroom:
Workshop:

For any feedback, please call **Toll free No. 1800 100 6464**

www.mgmotor.co.in
1800 100 6464

MG Motor India Pvt. Ltd.

All information, illustrations and specifications contained in this Owner's Manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of publication. The right is reserved to make changes at any time without notice.

Version: 03-09/2022/XXXX



1 1 4 6 1 4 0 1